

**The historie  
of Leonard Are-**

**tine, concerning the warres be-  
thene the Imperialles and  
the Gothes for the possession of  
Italy, a worke very plea-  
sant and profit-  
table.**

**Translated out of Latin into Englishe  
by Arthur Goldyng.**

**PRINTED AT LON**

**don by Rowland Hall, for  
George Bucke.**

**1563.**



461

43

104



To the ryghte ho-  
norable Sir William Sicill  
Knichte principall Secretarie to the  
Queenes Maiestie and Maister of  
her hyghnesse Court of wardes  
and lueries, Arthur Golding  
wyltheth continuance of  
health, with encrease  
of honour.



Like as vines to  
the entent the bet-  
ter to prosper and  
preserue their fruit  
to the vse & plea-  
sure of man, require the staye of  
trees that bee stronger then  
themselves : Euen so it beho-  
ueth them that mynde to put  
forth any worke to the behoofe  
and cominoditie of others, to  
shroude themselves vnder the  
fauour of some suche person, for  
a.ii. whose

## The Epistle

whose sake their doing may be  
the better liked and accepted of  
all men.

The whiche thyng thys my  
rude and vnpolished transla-  
tion of the hystoꝛye of Leonard  
Aretine right well perceauyng,  
at such tyme as being fully fini-  
shed & ended it was nowe rea-  
die to set fote out of doꝛes and  
to commit it selfe to the wyde  
world, beholding it self spoyled  
of hys Romaine garment and  
turned into a playne Englyshe  
cote, beganne to be somwhat a-  
bashed and to loke about hym  
for some fauourable patrone vn-  
der whose protection it myght  
aduenture to goe abrode. But  
to whō rather ought it to pre-  
sent it selfe then to hym vnder  
whose

### Dedicatorie.

whose roose it hath bene hat  
broughed and fostered fro the  
infancie, vntyll suche tyme as  
it came to his full growth. And  
therefore although the wante  
of fyne pennypng and eloquent  
indityng of the hystorve in our  
language, enforce me to con  
fesse it unworthye to trouble  
your honour beyng otherwyse  
busyed in mooste weyghtye af  
fayres of thys Realme: yet  
notwithstandyng partly in co  
syderation of my dutye, but  
more vppon confydence of your  
clemencye, I haue taken bold  
nesse to dedicate the same vnto  
you: so muche the rather, in  
as muche as the worke entrea  
teth of serious and weyghtye  
matters.

a.iii. wher



## The Epistle

Wherein if it mai please your honour so to accepte my doing, as that this my synple Translati on maye vnder your fauourable protectiō be bold to shewe it self abroad, I shall not only thinke my trauell abundauntly recompenced, but also account it for a further encouragemente, to geue the aduenture vpon some greater matter hereafter. Finis  
shed at your house in y<sup>e</sup> Strand  
the second of Aprill. 1563.

By your honours at commaundement  
Arthur Goldyng.

# TO THE READER.

**I**F Masimiche as this worke of  
Leonard Aretine entreateth of  
the repulping of the Gothes out  
of Italy by the Captaines of the impe-  
roure of Constantinople, touchyng  
lightly by the way the cause of their ar-  
riual in the same countrey. It seemeth  
expedient to make further rehearfall  
of y<sup>e</sup> cause of their first enterance with  
in the boundes of y<sup>e</sup> Romaine Empire,  
& of their successe in the same throught  
which they grewe so strong in proceſſe  
of tyme, that they not only bearest it of  
dyuerſe prouinces & members pertain-  
ing thereto, but also gatte into their  
handes Italy it self with y<sup>e</sup> Ilands ad-  
ioyning, making theſelues Lordes and  
Maisters of Rome sometime ſoueraigne  
lady & Emperreſſe of the world. In decla-  
ration wherof y<sup>e</sup> matter it ſelf wil ſome-  
what miniſter occaſion to ſpeake of the  
Crules and of Odoacer out of whole  
handes the Gothes wyſted y<sup>e</sup> dominiō  
a. ſig. and

# To the Reader.

and possession of Italy: and finally of  
the two politike martiall and fortu-  
nate Captaynes Belisarius and Nar-  
ses, whoe after eyghtene yeares war-  
res, recovered the same againe to  
the Emperour. The whiche thynges  
I wlll ouer take as breifely as the  
matten wlll permitt. The Gothes  
therefore by the assertion and consente  
of allowable Authours, enhabyted some  
tymes beyonde the ryuer Rhyne or Da-  
nube in the Countrey called in olde  
tyme Dacia nowe named Malachia,  
so that the Ostrogothes or Easterne  
gothes bordering vpon the east of  
Pontus Euxinus, (of whom this  
presente booke entreateth) are ac-  
counted for the Gertes and Triballes;  
and the Visigothes or Westeringothes  
enhabytynge more into the fryme and  
myne lande toward the head of Da-  
nube and Germanie, are accounted  
for the Daces or Daues. Nowe a-  
bout the yere of our Lord God 372  
diminished & delirious 372 372 372  
372

\* Nowe called  
Mare maiore

## To the Reader.

In the tyme of Valens Emperour of  
the Caste, a certayne people of Scythia named Hunnes assembling them  
selues in greate number, vnder the  
conducte of their Captayne Adaris  
inuaied the Easterngoths & brought  
them in subiection. The western-  
goths stricken wyth feare at the so-  
dayne misfortune of their neyghbours,  
abandonyng theyr natyue Countrey  
sent Ambassadors to the Emperour  
Valens, profering to receaue the  
Christen faith, and to set themselves  
as a wall & bulwarke to the Romaine  
Empyre agaynst the assaults of the  
cruell Hunnes and other Barbarous  
nations, so that he woulde suffer them  
to passe the ryuer Danow and geue  
them Mycia to inhabyte. Vpon this  
condition their requeste was graun-  
ted, and they receaued both Christen  
Religion and also gouernours of the  
Emperour.

\* Now called  
Tartarie.

210



## To the Reader.

Throughe the misgouerement and ex  
toxiõ of whõ they were so bered, that  
they made insurrection agaynst h̄ Em  
pyre, subdued Mysia & Thrac ouer  
came the imperour in battel & burnt him  
in a cotage where he had hidde himself,  
and finally besieged Constantinople.  
Neuerthelesse afterwarde as well ap  
peased and pacified by the vertuous &  
vpright gouernement, as vanquished &  
subdued by the force & puiſſance of The  
odosius (who succeeded Valens) they  
submitted themselves agayne to h̄ Ro  
maine Emperre, & serued in the warres  
at cõmandement by the space of .ccc.  
yeares, vntill suche tyme as Stilico  
(trayterously practisynge the confusion  
of Honorius sonne of the sayd Theo  
dosius, to the entent to haue made hys  
own sonne Eucherius Emperour) by  
puttyng them out of wages, & defraun  
ding them of their pensions, compelled  
them to rebell agayne. Whereupon ta  
kyng weapon in hande, they invaded  
Dannonie, & there makynge one Alari  
cicus

## To the Reader.

ricus a noble and valiante gentleman  
king, wasted all Pannonie, Thrace, &  
Sclauonie, with all the countreyes boz-  
dering vppon Italye, and synally after  
great slaughter both geuen and recea-  
ued, spoiled al Italy with fyre & sword,  
sacked Rome, and conquered Spayne,  
where they also settled themselves, and  
within selwe yeares after grew to such  
wealth authorite & puissance, that the  
yonger Valentinian Emperoure of  
Rome (of whom mention shalbe made  
in the begynnyng of thys worke) ente-  
ryng in leage with their King Theo-  
doziche, vled hys ayde agaynst Attila  
kyng of the Hunnes. For the Hunnes  
lyke good bloudhoundes followyng  
freshly the pursute of their foresaid vic-  
torye agaynst the Easterngothes part-  
ly moued of enuie towarde the state of  
the Romayne Emppre, and partly sol-  
licited thereto by the traytour Ruffins  
whom Theodosius had left as gouer-  
nour and protector of hys other sonne  
Arcadius Emperoure of the Caste,) associating

## To the Reader.

associatynge vnto them the sayed Easterngothes, the Gepides, the Grcles, and other Barbarous people to the number of fyue thousande men; vnder the conducte of Attila (worthely surnamed the scourge of God) afflicted the dominions and prouinces of the Romayne Emppre; and in especially wasted and spoiled Italye; rasyng her Cytyes to the grounde; and beating downe all thynges before them lyke a moste vyolente and horrible tempeste. After whose retorne into Pannonie, the seate of their kyngdome; Attila immediatly dyed. Whereuppon ensued dyscord betwene the Hunnes and the Easterngothes, in whiche the Gothes drawing to their parte the Gepides, preuayled; and drave the Hunnes oute of Pannonie backe againe into Tartarie from whence they first came. Howbeit they left their name still beynde them to the Countrey, the whiche after them is called Hunnary.

## To the Reader.

called Hungarye vnto thys daye.

Aboute the same yere that the Gothes had dryuen the Hunnes oute of Hungarie, it fortuned that one Aspar a noble man of greate power and authorite proclaymed hys sonne Ardaburis Ceaſer agaynst Leo then Emperoure of Constantinople. In ſomuche that Leo was fayne to aſſemble a power and encounter wyth hym wyth in the Cytie. In the whyche conflicte Aspar and Ardaburis beyng overcome were yelded to the Emperoure and put both to death. The Gothos takyng orcaſion of aduantage vppon thys ciuill warre, waſted all Sclauonie and neuer reſted vntyll ſuch tyme as Leo had graunted them Hungarye (from whence they had viterlye expulſed the ſonnes of Attila) together with Miſia to haue and holde freely withoute tribute or ſubiectiō to the Emperre. Vppon whyche condition truce was taken, and ſo better obſeruyng thereof.

Theodenur



## To the Reader.

Theodenur Kyng of the Gothes gaue  
hys sonne Theodorich in Hostage vnto  
Leo . It was not long after but that  
there fel grudge & consequently warre  
betwene Theodenur and hys brother  
Alanur wherin Alanur was slaine.  
By meanes whereof it came to passe,  
that Theodenur enioyed quietly the  
whole and entier possessiō of all Dacia,  
Pasia, and both the Pannonies . Leo  
therfore fearyng the power & puissance  
of Theodenur, deliuered him hys sone  
Theoderich. Theodenur in recōpence  
of that good turne, tourned the truce y  
was taken betwene them into conti-  
nual peace, and so the Gothes ceased to  
molest the Emperre . In the meane sea-  
son after muche alteration & vsurpyng  
by Tirantes, Augustulus a very childe  
the sonne of Drestes a sage and wyse  
Senatour of Rome, beyng by fauoure  
of the Citizens of Rauenna proclay-  
med emperour of the Weste, to the en-  
tent to refreshe and ease the Emperre of  
the long contynued trouble that it had  
suffered

## To the Reader.

suffered many peares befoze, (by the counsell of hys father Drestes) tooke peace with the Vandales in Affricke, who had alwayes synce their first coming, bene euill neyghbours to the Emppre. But whyles all was calme and quiet on the south, beholde an he- deous and horrible tempeste riseth by agaynst hym out of the North. The E- rules and Turinges the miserable re- liques of the armie of Attila, (who af- ter that the sayd Attila was dead & hys sonnes dyuen away, being banquished by h̄ Casserngothes & compelled backe againe toward Tartarie w̄ h̄ Hunnes, had a while helde themselves in quiet about h̄ mouth of the Ryuer Danow) allured with the former spoyle of Italy (to whose bitter vndoing wel nye al the warres that were made in those dayes byd tend,) came backe agayne and con- queryng it, slewe Drestes and deposed Augustulus, in whom the honorable and renowned name of Augustus be- caied the. 517. yeare after that Octavius Ceaser

## To the Reader.

Ceser first had that name and title of  
honour given vnto hym of the Senate  
and people of Rome. By meanes  
wherof it came to passe, that Italy and  
Rome became afterward the common  
pray of Barbarous kinges, so y<sup>e</sup> he that  
could make hymself strongest enioy-  
ed the possession thereof. For Odoacer  
& his Cruels had scarcely yet fully set-  
tled thesclues, when y<sup>e</sup> Eastern gothes  
(who after the deceale of Theodenpr  
were now vnder y<sup>e</sup> gouernement of his  
sone Theoderich) enuying y<sup>e</sup> prosperitie  
of y<sup>e</sup> Cruels, & therewith calling to re-  
memb'rance how their own countrye  
the western gothes had already co-  
quered Spayne, y<sup>e</sup> Mandakes Affricke,  
the Frenchme, & Burgonions Gallia,  
y<sup>e</sup> Barons Britaine, & other nations o-  
ther pleasant fertile countries; earnest-  
ly besought and required their king, to  
leade them into Italye to the extent  
as well to aduance the same and re-  
noue of their Chenaile, as also to  
place thesclues in y<sup>e</sup> countrey which as  
it

## To the Reader.

it was the head and soueraine of all o-  
thers, so had it also the report to be the  
most pleasant, welthe, and fertile of al  
the Regions of Europe. Theoderich  
albeit he were in manner constrained  
by his subiects to doe the thinge that  
they requested, yet as one myndfull of  
the great benefites that his ancessours  
had receiued of 3 Emperours of Con-  
stantinople, and of the honorable enter-  
tainement that he himselfe had had at  
suche tyme as he laye in hostage in the  
Emperours Court, he aduertised the  
Emperour Zeno the 6th, protesting  
he would doe nothing without his con-  
sent. Zeno who at that tyme stood in  
feare of Theoderich and the Gothes,  
(as one that so doubtless he should  
grow to strong for him in that parte of  
Europe, was fully determined before,  
to haue profered that volage unto him  
though no such question had bene mo-  
ued) gladly condescended to his petition  
for the more honour created him Co-  
sull. Whereupon Theoderich and his  
country.

b.i.

country.



## To the Reader.

countreymen with their wines and chyl-  
dren removed into Italye. Of whose  
good successe and of the good successe of  
his posteritie in that countrie, together  
with their expulsiō or rather subdu-  
ing by the Imperials, for as much as  
this Historie of Leonard Aretine doth  
at large entreate I will not be tedious  
in repeating the same. Howbeit it is to  
be vnderstanded that after the battell  
of Puceria where Teias last kinge of  
the Gothes was slayne, althoughe  
some departed awaye wth such thin-  
ges as they had according to covenant  
yet the greater part of them tarped stil;  
which degenerating into y name of  
Italians, lost both their empyre & owne  
name for ever the lxxi. yere after their  
first coming into y coutry vnder Theo-  
derich, being y yere of grace CCCC  
L. IIII. Nowe as concernynge the  
two noble and valiant captaines Be-  
lisarius and Parles the Conquerours  
and subduers of them, it is to be doub-  
ted whether the miserable misfortune

## To the Reader

of the one be more to be lamented, or  
the madnesse and folly of the o-  
ther (if I maye term the thyng accor-  
dyng to desert) be to be blamed. For  
Belisarius after that he had recovered  
Affricke from the Vandales, vanquish-  
ed the Persians, fought prosperously  
agaynst the Hedes, abated the po-  
wer and pulled downe the hygh cou-  
rages of the Gothes openinge a waye  
of conquest to hys successour, and at-  
cheued so many hault enterpryses and  
Marciall exploytes that the glorious  
fame of hys doynge did sprede hys re-  
nowne over all the worlde and made  
hys name immortall, in so muche  
that he was accompted as a perfect  
and incomparable Mirrour for all  
Captaynes to beholde, and a bette-  
r mayster of Cheualrye, whome  
neither ambytion the common cor-  
rupter of noble hartes, nor the  
licentious libertie of the Camp,  
nor the instigatyons of mighty  
Princes

## To the Reader.

Princes could withdraue from hys al-  
legians and promise made to the Em-  
perour Justinian. Was in the ende in  
hys olde dayes vppon lyghte suspicion  
wthoute pzoofe, by the same Empe-  
rour for whom he had so often put hys  
lyfe in perill: to whom he had acquired  
so muche honour, whose fauour he had  
esteemed more then to raygne himse-  
lfe as an Emperour, depriued of both his  
eyes, and constrainied to begge hys  
bread miserably from doore to doore,  
an vnwoorthy rewarde for so manye  
good dedes and so muche good seruice  
done to the Emperre. And Marcellus the  
subduer of the Gothes and reducer of  
Italy to the Emperre when he had go-  
uerned it quietly manye yeres togy-  
ther to hys greate honour and admy-  
ration, at the laste (lyke a shee cow  
whyche when she hath geuen a good  
quantitie of mylke ouerthoweth the  
pagle wth her heele and spylleth the  
same) prouoked onely by the presump-  
tuous wordes of a bayne and enuious  
woman

## To the Reader.

Woman, I weued suche a web (according  
to his owne wordes) as neyther she  
noꝝ the Emperour were able to weare  
oute, no noꝝ he hymselfe to byweave  
agayne after he had ones putte it into  
the loome, though he dyd the best he  
could to haue stayed it, so hard and dif-  
ficult a matter is it to stoppe a mischief  
of the course, when it ones hath got-  
ten the reynes in the necke, and hath  
set foote forward to runne the race. For  
the Lombardes beinge by hym in the  
extasse of his fume the rage called oute  
of Pannonie (which by that tyme was  
become the common receptacle of the  
enemies of the Emppre) not onelye  
wythin shorte tyme after hys decease  
broughte Italye in subiection to them,  
but also syngs that daye hytherto (why-  
che thyng neyther the Gothes, Hūnes  
Vandales, Erules, noꝝ anye other of  
the barbarous nations with their ma-  
nyfolde and terrible assaults were a-  
ble to compasse and bypunge to effecte)  
haue helde a porcion thereof as a  
b. 14. perpe.



perpetuall possession and inheritance  
to themselves, whych retainers their  
name vnto this daye. But forasmuch  
as these thinges were done somewhat  
after the subduing of the Gothes, and  
doe litle or nothinge pertaine to the  
presente purpose of this Historie  
I will not stand any longer  
vpon them, but remitt  
the to the reader  
his owne  
I will not stand any longer  
vpon them, but remitt  
the to the reader  
his owne

# The p[re]face of

Leonard Aretine, vnto hys  
bookes of the warres in  
Italye againste the  
Gothes.



Although it had  
bene a far greater  
pleasure to me, to  
haue wrytten of  
the prosperous &  
flourishing estate of Italy, then  
of the slaughtres and destruc-  
tion of it: yet notwithstanding  
to as much as the time re-  
quitteth otherwyse, we also wil  
chaunge wyth the tyme a fol-  
low the mutabilitie of fortune  
reportinge in these bookes the  
inuations of the Gothes, & the  
warres through the which al-  
most all Italy was brought to  
b.iiii. vtter

The Authours preface.  
bitter ruine & destruction. Sure  
ly a sorrowfull matter, but yet  
for the knowledge of thinges  
done in these dayes, necessarie  
to be entreated of. For I can  
not thinke but that when Xe  
nophon of Athens that excellēt  
Clerke, dyd myte of the bele  
ging and fainishing of Athens  
and of the throwing downe of  
the walles of it, he was sorie in  
his harte that he had occasion  
so to doe. And yet he wrote it,  
because he thought it expedient  
that the remembrance of such  
thinges shuld not perishe. They  
ther doth our Wuy deserve les  
praise when he reherceth the ta  
king and burning of Rome by  
the frenchmen, then when he  
setteth out the famous triumph  
of Paulus Emilius over the  
Maces

The Authours p̄face.

Macedones, or the noble conquestes of Scipio Africanus. For it is the dutie of an historie to put in writing all aduētures as well vnfortunate as fortunate. And therefore a man maye wythe þ best, but he must wyte be it good or bad as occasiō of fereth. I assure you as I was inditinge these matters, albeit many things did greue me, for the ntier loue þ I beare to my native countrey, yet not wythstanding thys reason I had to comfort me, þ although Italy suffered at y tyme most extreme miseries. yet at the length she not onely gate thupper hand & expulsed those forreine nations but also hath remainned from þ day to this most welthy & puissant both by sea and land, and that



The Authours preface.  
that from that tyme forth her  
Cities haue flourished in riches  
& aucthorie most abundantly,  
and doe flourish still at this ho-  
wer, thour and Dominion of  
the now stretchyng it self far &  
on al sides, so that the thinges  
that haue happened vnto her,  
seeme not so much to be lament-  
ted as to be reioyced at, like vnto  
to Hercules whose greates ex-  
ploits made him more famous  
then euer he should haue bene  
if he had not attempted those  
dangereous enterprises. I will  
not speake of the great Ciui-  
llitie, good Nurture, Courte-  
sy, & read of all Libertall artes &  
learning, of which Italy ma-  
neth it self to be a natural ind-  
ther & a very notable, for I will  
let y<sup>e</sup> commendations of her alone  
vntil another tyme. As concer-

The Mathours preface.

King & watter & we now must  
entente of these remained in  
mention of the ainsong & Latin  
writers chief there went a re-  
port to make to us & that very  
neder & obsonce & Bellarius &  
Charles captains of emperor  
Jannus and alie & Gothes out  
of Italy; but where or in what  
fort, or by what meanes, there  
was no inkling at al left in  
king. We came by & knowledge  
of the one of & Iacob Chronicles.  
Wherefore as I had don by ma-  
ny other things before, so also  
I endeavored to bring again to  
light these things being well  
blurred & blotted out of memo-  
ry. And & so much & rather, be-  
cause posterities for & most  
part do collect in thair histories & do-  
ings of strangers, but this to do  
with wholly our own matters.

### The Authours preface.

Wherein it maye be worthe a  
mans labour to search & peruse  
the state of Italye in those daies  
what Cities, and what kind of  
people were in it what towne  
and cities were besieged, which  
were wonne and brought in  
subiectio, & in what places bat-  
tells were fought. for to know  
all these thynges it is a great  
praise, and not to knowe the it  
is a foule shame. for it is a token  
that a man loveth his country,  
not to be ignorant in the origi-  
nall and proceedings thereof, or  
whatsoever els hath fortun'd  
vnto it in tymes past. further  
more the knowledge of histories  
doth greatly delight the mynd  
because all we men doe of na-  
ture count to knowe things, and  
also it bringeth great profit for  
any man that is well gladd to see

The Authours preface.

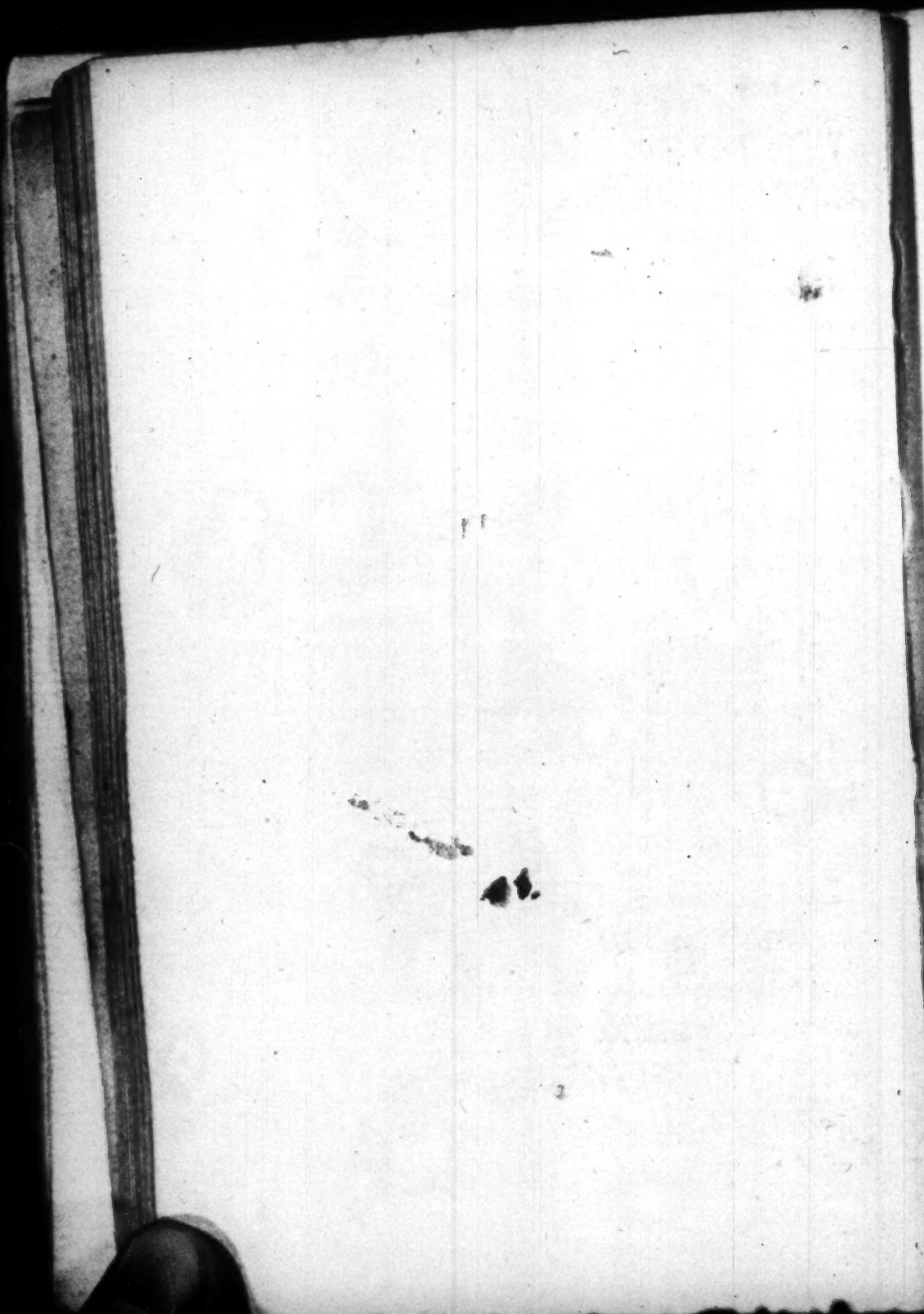
as much as it containeth per-  
amples of like affaires to what  
end they came, & gyueth experi-  
ens in many thyngs, through  
the which old men are accom-  
ted wiser then yongme, because  
they haue sene mo thynges in  
their liues time, and by experi-  
ens not only of their own but  
also of other mens perilles, are  
made more wary, and therefore  
are able to giue better iudgement  
and are wont to be led by bet-  
ter counsel. For whē they rede  
of the riches and Empires of  
greatest kyngs and of puissan-  
test nations and perceyue how  
sone they com to decay, they vn-  
derstand by & by what a folly it  
is to boast & be proud for those  
things, which no man is able  
to assure himself that they shall  
conti-



The Authours preface.

cōtinue with him vntill night.  
Thus doth an Historie make  
vs bothe more wyle and more  
modest in our dooingses. And  
therfore ryght reuerend father  
I determined to dedicate these  
Bookes vnto you, as well to  
thentent you might vnderstand  
my entier loue and affection to  
wardes you, as also that you  
myghte be as a Judge of my  
worke and trauel, the which I  
shal thinke very well bestowed  
if so wyle and wellearned a mā  
as you are, doe allowe them and  
take them in good wythe.  
Wheruppon I will take  
ocasion to goe in hand  
with the procelle of  
myne Historie.  
Farewell.

t.  
ke  
re  
nd  
er  
ese  
to  
ad  
to  
ou  
ny  
ed  
na  
nd  
re  
at  
not  
not  
not  
not  
not



# The fyrst Booke

of Leonard Aretine, concernyng the warres in Italy  
against the Gothes.

## The first Chapter.

The disposition of Agastulus, the diuision of the landes through Italy, the cause of the commying of the Gothes thither, and of their encounter with Odoacers Captaines.

**I**n the tyme that Zenno was Emperour of Rome, the Gothes vnder the leading of Theodorich, determined to inuade Italy, lately before soore afflicted with diuers rodes and inuasions of barbarous people, and at that tyme oppressed with the tyranny of Odoacer, of the which thinges I purpose to entreate, repeatyng somewhat deper the state of those tymes, to the intent it may be knowen

A.I.

from



**O**f the warre of the  
from whence the Gothes first came,  
and what hope moued them to inuade  
the Emppre.

The death of  
Valentinian.

After the death of the yonger Valentinian, who (as it is well ynough knowen) was slayne at Rome of hys owne Subiectes, the Emppre of the West beganne to wauer, and to bee as it were without lyfe or soule.

Nowe, there were at the same tyme in Italy, great armyes of forreyners raysed latelye before by Valentinian for feare of Attila, and afterwarde associated by the Romaynes agaynst the Wandales. These forreyners perceyvinge the emponerment and weakenesse of the Emppre, and thereupon takynge courage, conspired together, and demaunded to haue the thyrd parts of the landes throughe all Italye deuyded amonge them.

The name of the Emppre reestablished at that tyme in one Augustulus, who beyng but a verie chylde, was gouerned by hys father Orestes a Senator

## Gothes in Italy.

2

Senatour of Rome. Therefore at  
suche tyme as the menne of warredes  
maunded a partition of the landes;  
and that Orestes beyng a wyse and  
sage personne wythstoode they request,  
the Souldyours fiewe hyt, and  
fourthelwyth folowynge they Cap-  
tayne Odoacer, came to Rome  
and deposed Augustulus. By mea-  
nes whereof hauinge now the lawe  
in theyr owne hande, they deuyded the  
thyrde part of the landes among them.  
Odoacer hauinge by this meanes  
gotten the Soueraynmyte, in his  
owne name and in the name of the ar-  
mye ruled the Cyties at his owne  
luste and pleasure.

Augustulus is  
deposed and  
Odoacer vius  
peth.

Zeno also Gouvernour of the East  
Empyre lying at Constantinople, be-  
ganne to dread sooke the power of  
Theodorich. For the Gothes that in-  
habited the vpper coaste of Thracia,  
hadde alreadye begonne to bere and  
disquiett the Countreys borderynge  
vppon them.

The cause of  
the commynge  
of the Gothes  
into Italy.

A. y.

And

## Of the warre of the

And it was none other lyke, but that they woulde make some insurrection against the Romain Emperre. Whereupon to the entent to delyuer hymself and the countreys there aboutes from feare of the Gothes. He perswaded Theodorich to passe into Italy, and to delyuer the cities there oute of the hands of the wrongfull withholders of them. Induced with these persuation Theodorich remouyng out of Thrace, and leadyng with him the Gothes with their wyues and chyldren and al that ever they had through Syriam and Illyricum, went toward Italy: where at hys first entraunce, the Captaines of Odoacer camme against him with their armies. The first battell betwixt them was fought not farre from the Citie of Aquileia, vppon the riuier Pontius. In the which conflict after a long and sharpe encounter, the Gothes gate the victorie, and putte the Captaynes of Odoacer to flyght.

The

## Gothes in Italy. 3.

### The.ij Chapter.

Theodorich kyng of the Gothes besiegeth Odoacer in Rauenna, the matter is ended by composition, each of them lyeth in wayre to destroye other, Theodorich preuenting Odoacer killeth hym at a banquet, by meanes whereof he obteyneth the soueraignitie of Italy, of the actes of Theodorich and of hys death.

**A**fter this, when the Gothes had wonne the cities there aboutes, and vanquished the power of their enemyes in other places also, at length they besieged Odoacer in the Citie of Rauenna. The siege held the Gothes tack lenger then they thought it woulde haue done at the firste, and that happened by reason of the situation of the place. For neyther can Rauenna bee easlye besieged vppon that syde that is towarde the sea, because it standeth hard vppon the shore, neither vppon that syde that is towarde the land, because it hath a diche cut from the river Po, and is enuyroned wth

no other way  
Odoacer is  
besieged.

A.ij. certaine



## Of the warre of the

certaine standyng waters and marishes. By meanes whereof, the Gothes laye well nye full thre yeres at the siege thereof and could not wyne it. But yet in the meane season, thei won all the towne nere aboute, sauyng Celesna, the which also was kept with a stronge garrison of Odoacers.

Composition, the Defendaantes beinge weryed, the  
betwene Odo  
acer and  
Theodorich.

At the last as well the Assaylaunts as the matter was decided by composition, that Theodorich and Odoacer should be Comperes and Felowes in Emprye. After that thynges were thus set at a stape, Theodorich and hys Gothes entered into Raucenna, neyther was there any parte of all Italy that was not content to receyue hym.

But this copertnershypp in the Emprye lasted not longe. For when as the one bare grudge in hys heart pretelye agaynst the other, Theodorich preventyng Odoacer badde hym to a

The death, of  
Odoacer.

Banquet and there kyled hym, and so with hys Gothes bare all the thwaye along

## Gothes in Italy. 4.

alone in Italy. Howe be it, to save the  
trueth, hys gouernement was not be-  
cyme intollerable, albeit he retyrned for  
hys people & thyrde part of the lands,  
in suche sort as Odoacer had lately be-  
fore denyed them. For he suffered  
the cities to bee gouerned by their own  
lawes and by theyr owne citizins.

The raygne  
and actes of  
Theodorich.

Appoynting Rauenna to bee the Sea  
of hys kyngdome, where he also plan-  
ted hym selfe. Thyrte and seuen  
yeres raygned Theodorich in Italye:  
nether late he styll idellyc lyke a co-  
warde all the whyle. For he bothe an-  
nered Sicill wyth all the Ilandes a-  
bout it vnto hys kyngdome, and also  
subdued Dalmatia. Moreover, du-  
ryng the sayde tyme of hys raygne, he  
led an huge hoste ouer the Alpes and  
the ryuer Rhone into Fraunce a-  
gynste the Frenche men.

Thus dyd thys kyng manye noble  
actes, and hys name was famous  
and renowned, sayynge that in  
hys lattes dayes, he was noted of  
cruelty

Symmachus.  
Boetius.

Of the warre of the  
crueltye and outrage, for putting to  
death of Symmachus and Boetius  
Senatours of the citie of Rome, with  
certain other noble men, onely vppon  
suspition that they sought to set the ci-  
tie at libertie.

The. iij. Chapter.

Amulufuentha the daughter of The-  
odorich with her sonne Athalaricke  
succeede in the kingdome, the seueri-  
tie of the Quene in executing of iu-  
stice, the wilfulnesse of the Gothes  
in the education of theyr kyng, the  
vntimely death of the said Athalaricke  
the great frendship of the Quene to-  
ward Theodatus, & the ingratitude  
of him towards her agayn, the empe-  
rour Iustinian sendeth Belisarius a-  
gainst the Gothes, and he conque-  
reth all Sicill.

Theodorich being deceased with-  
out issue male, his daughter  
Amulufuentha, as then a widow,  
with her sonne Athalaricke suc-  
ceeded in the kingdome. This Athala-  
ricke

## Gothes in Italy. 5.

ricke was but a chyld to speake of, and therefore all the whole care of the gouernment lay in the Quæens necke.

Who hauyng great regard of her infant, immediatly dyd put hym forth to be broughte vp in learnynge and good nurture. For she gaue hym learned

An example  
of the good  
education of  
a Priace.

men to be his teachers, and appoynted certaine Lordes of the Gothes, men auncient, of great grauitie and good bringyng vp to be continually aboute hym. And she her selfe looked verye straightlye to the gouernement of the Emperre, prohibiting the Gothes as well to do wronge as to take wronge, and also repealyng diuers actes of her father Theodozich, reducyng them to a moore gentlenesse and clementie.

Iustice and  
clementie in  
a woman.

Amongest the whiche this was one, that she restoyed to the sonnes of Boetius and Symmachus their fathers goods and inheritaunce, which Theodozich had lately before confiscate: affirming that they were wrongfully condemned through false accusations.

A. b. where



## Of the warre of the

Justice with-  
out parcialitie

whereto the kyng vnadvisedly had ge-  
uen lyght credit. Furthermoze, he  
compelled her cosyn germaine Theo-  
datus (who hauyng great possessions  
in Thuscane had taken many sermes  
and maners violently from hys neigh-  
bours lyke a tyrant) to make resti-  
tution of the harmes he had done,  
with a sharpe rebuke for hys great  
misbehauour. This seueritie of the  
Queene, made many of the Gothes to  
become her enemyes. And therefore,  
certayne of the chief of them conspiring  
together, determined to bring by her  
sonne contrary to her disposition, man-  
gre her power. Whereupon thei came  
vnto her saying, it lyked not the Go-  
thes that their kyng should lyue in  
subiection vnder tutors and teachers,  
or that he should be kept in awe of his  
elders, they sayd it was mete for a  
kyng of such pusaunce as he should be  
to set hys mynde vppon the ensigne and  
seates of armes, and to exercise hym-  
self among lusty yong gentlemen, ra-  
ther

## Goffes in Italy. 6.

ther than to learne to wayte vppon a  
maister, or to sit glumming amonge a  
sort of old Dotards. For by this mea-  
nes both the body & the mynde of their  
Kyng shoulde bee effeminated: But  
through thother he shoulde encrease as  
well in strength and courage, as also  
in conning and experience. For he was  
not made kyng to thentent to instruct  
his people in learnyng, but to enlarge  
his dominion by knighthod & cheualry.  
The Quene albeit she were not igno-  
rant to what end & purpose al this dyft  
was dyuen, yet not withstanding be-  
cause she would not seme to be vtterly  
against their requests, she cōdescended  
vnto the. The yong prince being deli-  
uered to the cōpany of as youthfull as  
himself, win a litle while after, fell to a  
more lasciuious trade of liuing solowig  
altogether w<sup>th</sup> lust of y<sup>e</sup> flesh & such other  
kinds of filthy pleasures. And against  
his mother he became so stoberne & self  
willed through thenticement of ill coun-  
sell that he disdained to go vnto her or  
speake to her.

The

Licentious li-  
berty corrup-  
tion of youth

## Of the warre of the

**Evill counsell** The Queene when she saw her self by  
**the confusion** such pollicies assaulted of her aduer:  
**of counsellors** sary and bereft of her kyngdome, be-

ing a woman of a stout courage, could  
no longer beare with their doynges,  
but sent certaine of her officers priue-  
ly, and put to death thre of the chiefest  
of the Gothes, whiche were the ryng-  
leaders and counsaylers of her sonne  
vnto all noughtinesse. And so hauyng  
reconciled hym vnto her, she tooke vp-  
pon her the gouernement again. But

**The death of**  
**Athalaricke.**

Athalaricke beyng fallen into diuers  
surfetts and diseases through the dis-  
order of hys former lasciuious lyuyng,  
deceased in the .xviij. yere of hys age,  
when he had reigned with hys mother  
.x. yeres after the death of Theodorich.

The Queene after the decease of her  
sone, thinking that she shuld be the bet-  
ter able to wade through w<sup>th</sup> the weigh-  
tye assayes of the realme, yf so be she  
had some partaker & assistant, tooke her

**Theodotus is**  
**made kyng.**

cousin Theodatus (of whome I made  
mention before) to be her pertner in

the

## Gothes in Italy.

7.

the kyngdome. This Theodatus was excellently well learned both in Latyne and in Greke, and had geuen himself much to the reading of Plato and other philosophie. Nevertheless, being of nature feeble and vnconstant he was distayned wyth many vices. Through whych where as the quene of her mere bountie & good wyll, had raysed hym from a subiect to the state of a kyng, he forthwyth requited her with the greatest ingratitude and treacherie that could be. For he conspired secretly with her enemyes, and tooke and sent her as a banished persone, into the Ilelande in the lake of Tullin. And ere it was long after, he suffered her to be kyled by the kynnsfolke and chyldren of them, whome she had put to death in the tyme of the obstinate rebellion of her sonne agaynst her. This so great vntueth and treacherye of Theodatus, dyd greatly disquiet many of the Gothes, lamenting the unworthy mischaunce of the Queene, &

An example of  
exceeding in-  
gratitudo.

to



## Of the warre of the

to see the posteritie of Theodorich so wickedly destroyed, in so much that it wanted but litle, but that the Gothes had made insurrection against him.

The cause of  
the warres be  
twene the  
Emperour &  
the Gothes.

Whereof as soone as the Emperour Justinian had intelligence (for after Zeno, Anastasius, & Justine, the Emperour descended vnto him) thinking that the tyme now serued to set Italy at libertie, he applied all his whole mynde and study how to compasse and bring the same to effect. Herevnto his prosperous successe since he was Emperour prouoked him: in as much as lately before by his captain Belisarius, he had vanquished the Vandales and wrested Affrick out of their hands. And therefore he thought it was not to be abidden, that (contrary to the honour of the Romain Emperour) Italy should be held in subiection by the barbarous. Induced with these reasons, he sent Ambassadors to Theodatus, requiring him to surrender by Italy & Sicill, in recompence whereof he profered him other dignities

The effect of  
the Emperours  
ambassade vnto  
Theodatus

## Gothes in Italy. 8.

dignities & promotions: the which offer  
 yf he refused, then he denounced open  
 war against him. Upon the refusall of  
 these offers made by Theodatus, the  
 Emperour intending to make no fur-  
 ther delay, commaunded Belisarius to  
 passe into Italy with his army. Howe-  
 beit whiles he was making preparatiō  
 he pretended as though he would haue  
 sent his naup into Affricke, & not into  
 Sicill. About the same time also he co-  
 mmaunded another of his captaines cal-  
 led Mundus to invade Dalmatia with  
 another power: to the extent that the  
 Gothes being assayled on all sides at  
 once, might the easier be oppressed.  
 Mundus entering into Dalmatia won  
 Salons & set al the countrey on an up-  
 rore. Belisarius hauing rigged hys  
 shippes & embarked hys Souldiours,  
 sayled toward Sicill. He had of foote-  
 men a sufficient number, all tall men  
 and pyked Souldiours, and his horse  
 men were conueyed wpth him by wa-  
 ter also.

Belisarius is  
 appoynted in  
 to Italy and  
 Mundus into  
 Dalmatia.

Belisarius vis-  
 age into Sicill  
 and of his do-  
 ing there.

Captaynes

## Of the warre of the

Captaines of his footemen were Constantine, Vellias, and Herodian: captaines of his horsemen were Valentinus, Innocent and Magnus: and lieutenant generall and soueraigne of them all was Belisarius. Who following the commaundment of the emperour bys maister whereas he pretended to sayle towarde Carthage, arriued by the way in Sicill, and there goyng a land as it had bene to refresh hym selfe and bys souldoyours, when he espyed tyme and occasion for bys purpose, sodenlye he assailed the cite Catina and wonne it. Then shewing hym self with bys army abroad, and disclosing bys prepenesed purpose, within few dayes after, he receyued

\* Syracuse by composition. After this it is a wonder to see how victorie ranne on bys syde, and how the Cities of theyr owne accord yelded and called him to them. The cause herof was the hatred that the Sicilians bare to the Gothes, and the authoritie of the Emperre

A politique  
Captaine.

\* Now called  
Syracusa

## Gothes in Italy. 9

Empyre of Rome, together with the  
presence of Belisarius. At home (for  
as much as he had deliuered Affricke  
from the Mandaliens) they hoped  
should do the lyke by the Gothes tho-  
rough Sicill & Italy. Moreover, the Go-  
thes had made no preparation in Sicill,  
because they looked not for any warre  
there. By meanes whereof it came to  
passe, that as many of the Gothes as  
were in Sicill, beyng amazed at the so-  
dain inuasion of Belisarius, and the  
hasty reuoltyng of the cities, thought  
more of runnyng awaye then of ma-  
kyng resistance. Only the citie of \*Pa-  
normus (by reason there was a strong  
garrison of the Gothes in it) abode the  
siege, and endured it to the uttermost.  
The which citie beyng very defensible  
and well fortified toward the land, and  
theroppon settynge lyght by any thing  
that the enemye could worke agaynst it,  
at the last by a naye sent into the ha-  
uen was taken by the sea. For the ha-  
uen entred hard to the walles of the

\*Now called  
Palerno.

The siege of  
Panormus &  
the wyngnyng  
therof.

B. 1. towne;



## Of the warre of the

Captaines of his footemen were Constantine, Vellus, and Herodian: captaines of his horsemen were Valentinus, Innocent and Magnus: and lieutenant generall and soueraigne of them all was Belisarius. Who following the commaundment of the emperor his maister whereas he pretended to sayle toward Carthage, arrived by the way in Sicill, and there going a land as it had bene to refresh him selfe and his souldoyers, when he espied tyme and occasion for his purpose, sodenly he assailed the citie Catina and wonne it. Then shewing him self with his army abroad, and disclosing his premeditated purpose, within few dayes after, he receyved

\* Syracuse by composition. After this it is a wonder to see how victorie ranne on his side, and how the Cities of theyr owne accord yelded and called him to them. The cause hereof was the hatred that the Sicilians bare to the Gothes, and the authoritie of the Emperre

A politique  
Caprine.

\* Now called  
Sarzora

## Gothes in Italy. 9

Empyre of Rome, together with the  
 presence of Belisarius. At home (for  
 as much as he had deliuered Affricke  
 from the Mandaliens) they hoped  
 should do the lyke by the Gothes tho-  
 rough Sicil & Italy. Moreouer, the Go-  
 thes had made no preparation in Sicil,  
 because they looked not for any warre  
 there. By meanes whereof it came to  
 passe, that as many of the Gothes as  
 were in Sicill, beyng amazed at the so-  
 dain inuasion of Belisarius, and the  
 hasty reuoltyng of the cities, thought  
 more of runnyng awaye then of ma-  
 kyng resistance. Only the citie of \*Pa-  
 nozmus (by reason there was a strong  
 garrison of the Gothes in it) abode the  
 siege, and endured it to the uttermost.  
 The which citie beyng very defensible  
 and well fortified toward the land, and  
 theretoppon setting lyght by any thing  
 that the enemye could worke agaynst it,  
 at the last by a nauye sent into the ha-  
 uen was taken by the sea. For the ha-  
 uen cuttred hard to the walles of the

\*Now called  
 Palermo.

The siege of  
 Panormus &  
 the wynnynge  
 thereof.

B. J.      to hune;

## Of the warre of the

towne: And Belisarius had marked howe that in diuers places, the toppes of the mottes reached a great hight above the walles of the citie. Wherefore he set Archers and Syngers in the topcastles of the shypes, who with arrowes and darts dyd so beate their enemies vnderneath them on all sydes, that the walles were left naked without defendaunts: so that theyr companye went without daunger to the foote of the wall, and brake it downe. Thorough which distresse theyr enemyes beyng discomforted, yelded vp the towne. This was the last Cittie of all Sicill that came in subiection. When Belisarius had recovered Panormus he retourned to Syracuse, and there making sumptuous and royall pageants, threwe Golde and Syluer amonge the people. For it was the lastt daye of hys Consulshyppe the whyche was geuen hym in honour of the victorie that he gate of the Marcdalians. And Fortune was so fauourable vnto

The good successe of Belisarius.

## Gothes in Italy. 10

to hym, that bespares all hys former  
blowes, even the very laste daye of  
hys Consulthyppe the closed vp with  
the recoverie of all Sicill. Thus went  
the world in Sicill.

### The iiii. Chapter.

Of the doynges of Mundus in Dal-  
matia agaynst the Gothes, of the  
death of the sayde Mundus and  
hys sonne Maurice, and howe  
our Grippa a noble man of the  
Gothes recovereth all that Mun-  
dus had conquered before.

**I**n Dalmatia both parties raised  
greate powers and made two  
wardes the Citie of Salons. The doynges  
of Mundus in  
Dolme when they were comyn neare Dalmatia,  
unto the town, and that the warre was  
whote on bothe partes, at length there  
was a battell fought, not prepurposed  
but by chaunce vpon the sodaine with-  
out knowledge before of any of both  
partes. The cause thereof was this.

B. d.

The



## Of the warre of the

The captaine Mundus had a sonne called Maurice a goodly yong gentleman and a tall man of his handes. Who having the leading of a troope of Horsemen, rode to view the Campe of the Gothes. Now by chaunce the Gothish horsemen met with him, and as soone as the one parte had espied the other, there was no tarience but straight to the skirmishe. So thei encountred for a tyme very fiercely, and many of the stoutest of the Gothes were slaine, and at the last Maurice also was kyled.

Sodaine battell  
betwene  
the Gothes &  
the Imperials

AUGUST

Both the Campes hearing of the skirmishe, made speede to rescow their companies. Whyles that Mundus was on his way, tidings was brought him of the losse of his sonne. Then the man being of nature fierce & warlike, ran in a rage lyke a mad man vpon his enemies. By that time was all the hoste of the Gothes come thithert, and the encounter was with the whole power of either part, the battell was very bloody and cruell. At length the Gothes being

## Gothes in Italy. 11

being discomfited with great slaughter and losse of their people were put to flight. But MUNDUS whiles he insatiably followed the slaughter of the Gothes, and for angre and sorow of the losse of his sonne pursued the chase to farre, was recountered of his dispersed enemies and slain: and so the father through the outragious reuengement of his sonne, in the end did seeke his own confusion. After this battell both armies departed a fundre. For the Gothes being vanquished durst not abide in those quarters, and the Emperours souldiours being dismayed with the losse of theyr Captain, left Salons and retyred backe agayne. I thinke it not good to suppress with silens a thing that many authours haue made mencion of. They say there were certaine old verses of Sibill in the which it was prophesied, that when Affricke should be recovered by the Romains, then should MUNDUS (which word as it is here a mans name: so also it signifieth the  
W. 11. world)

Se thende of  
outragious  
furye.

A prophesie  
of Sybill.

## Of the warre of the

woylde) and hys p[er]sone shoulde p[er]p[et]ue.  
 This prophesie of Sybill made many  
 men affrayed, doutyng least heauen  
 and earthe with all mankynd shoulde  
 utterly haue decayed. But after the  
 tyme that Affrick in the former warres  
 was recovered by the p[er]suasice of Ve-  
 liscarius, then it appeared holwe that  
 Sybill prophesied of the destruction of  
 this Captaine and his sonne. So depe-  
 ly are all prophesies wrapped in dout-  
 full circumstances. After the death of  
 this Captaine and the departure of his  
 army, the Gothes beganne to growe  
 the stronger in those parts. For Grip-  
 pa one of the noble men of the Gothes,  
 immediatly therbypon raising a new po-  
 wer recovered Salons & all that euer  
 Mundus had gottē before i those places.  
 In so much that the Gothes were farre  
 of greater power then their enemies in  
 those borders. And therewithall The-  
 datus the king taking stoutly vpo him  
 thought himself able to match or rath-  
 er to overcome the myprouc in battell.

The Gothes  
 recover all  
 that Mundus  
 had cōquered

The

The. v. Chapter.

The Emperour sendeth a new Lieutenant into Dalmatia, named Constantian, who recouereth all Dalmatia and Lyburnia.

W<sup>H</sup>E<sup>N</sup> Justinian heard of the thynges that were done in Dalmatia, he made one of his Counters named Constantian Lieutenant of the warres there. And therewith all wrote to Belisarius that he should withoute further delaye passe into Italy. Constantian therfore hauyng repayred hys armye and throughe furnished hys nauye of all thynges, after that he hadde tarped a whyle aboute the doyng thereof at Dyrrachin, remoued from thence and sayled to Rhagusium. There were at Rhagusium certayne skoltwatches set there by Greppe, who seing þe nauy of Constantian passing along the shoreside, beautifull to beholde bothe for the

Constantian made lieutenant of Dalmatia.

B. ity. buylding



## Of the warre of the

buylding and number of the shippes,  
by and by retourned vnto Grippa, and  
where as y<sup>e</sup> thing was great of it self,  
they reported it to be far greater then  
it was in dede. At the which tidings  
Grippa was at his witts end and wist  
not in the worlde what to do. For he  
thought it both perilous and also great  
folly to encounter against so great a  
power: and to enclose him self within  
Salons he durst not, because he had  
the Citizins more then half in a gelou-  
sic of treason, & the walles of the towne  
were in diuers places decayed & fallen  
downe for lacke of reparation. More-  
ouer, considering that his enemies  
were to strong for him on y<sup>e</sup> sea, he was  
afrayed he should soone be brought to  
scarcetie of victualls. Being distressed  
with these cares, at length (which is  
the refuge in such extremities) he fell  
to counsell. According to the same he  
conueyghed all hys hoost a good waye  
out of Salons, and encamped in a  
place conuenient. In the meane tyme

Con-

The sodaine  
feare of Grip-  
pa at the arri-  
uall of Con-  
stantian.

Counsell the  
refuge of cares

## Gothes in Italy. 13.

Constantian arrived with all his flete at Lysne, there hauyng intelligence what was done, he sayled to the next shore, and there setting his men a land sent **CCCC** of them befoze, to take the streight & narrolwe passages in the night season, which are within a lytle way of Salons. The which thing being erecuted, he him self the next morning brought all his army to the citie, and without any trouble recovered the same. When Grippa had understanding therof, he taried not past two or thre dayes there, but that he determined to depart thence, and so he returned to Rauenna by water, leauyng by vtterly to the enemye bothe Dalmatia & Lyburnie, the which immediately without any resistance came into the hands of Constantian.

Constantian  
getteth Dal-  
matia and  
Lyburnia.

Dalmatia, Ly-  
burnia, & Illy-  
ricū, are nowe  
called all by  
one name of  
Sclauony.

### The.vj. Chapter.

¶ Belisarius arriuech in Italy, and after long siege wyppeth Naples.

B. b.

Belisa:

The arrivall  
of Belisarius  
in Italy,

Belisarius cometh to Naples.

## Of the warre of the

**B**elisarius vppon the receipt of the Emperours letters, when he shuld passe into Italy, leauing garrisons of souldiours at Syracuse and Panormus, went with the residue of his armie to Messina: and there waded ouer vnto Regium. From thence he led his armie by lande thzough the Brutians and Lucanes, commaunding his nauie to coast him by the shore of the neither sea as nere the land as might be. As he went forwarde, the inhabitants of those countreys reuolted to him thicke and threfold. When he had after thys sort certaine dayes continued his iourney, at length he stayed about Naples, the which citie was kept with a great and strong garrison of the Gothes. There he commaunded his shippes to lye at anchour in the hauen, but yet wout the shot of artillery, & he himselfe in the meane tyme bzinging his army nere vnto the towne, viewed the situation of the citie & the nature of the place vpon the land. It was not long after  
but

## Gothes in Italy. 14

but that he took by composition a strong bulwarke standyng in the Suburbes. Therebpon as he was about to plant hys siege, the Neapolitans sent theyr Oratours vnto him, among whome was one Stephan a man of much wisdom and authoritie in the citie.

He spake these wordes in effect: that Belisarius dyd not well to make war bpon the Neapolitans, whiche neuer had done hym any wronge in all his lyfe. They inhabited a citie kept by the garrisons of Theodatus and the Gothes, by meanes whereof he could not hope for any thyng at theyr hands beyng vnder the iurisdiction and subjection of other men. But yf so be it he myght be so bolde to say hys mynd, he dyd vnadvisedlye to lenger there in vayne. For hadde he once gotten Rome, he shoulde strayghte wayes obteyne Naples. But yf he were sette besyde Rome, he were not able to keepe Naples though he had it.

The words of the Neapolitan ambassadour to Belis.

Where



## Of the warre of the

The answer  
of Belisarius  
to the ambassa-  
dour.

Wherefore it had bene meete for him  
to haue gone firste of all to Rome a-  
gainst the Gothes that were there, and  
not to haue stayed at Naples, the whi-  
ch should fall as an ouerplus to the lot  
of the Conquerour which way so euer  
the world went. Belisarius replied  
therevnto; that whether he did aduise  
sedly or vnadvisedly in tarryng aboute  
Naples, was no part of their charge to  
determine, for he asked not their coun-  
sell therein: but rather to take thought  
for those things that pertained to them  
selues, namely whether it were better  
for them to procure their owne saue-  
garde and libertie by receyvinge the  
Emperours armye, or by continuing  
in bondage vnder the barbarous Go-  
thes woorthely to be besieged and utter-  
ly destroyed. For he was fully purpo-  
sed not to depart thence vntyll he had  
the citie at his pleasure, his desier was  
to obteyne the towne rather withoute  
their destruction then w<sup>th</sup> it. This was  
his saying openly. And secretly he per-  
suaded

## Gothes in Italy.

15.

suaded Stephan to exhort his Citizens rather to take the Emperours good will & Good counsel favour, then his indignation & displeasure. if it had bene taken.  
Who labours at their retourne in, to the citie, reported the words of Belisarius. And when thei came to consultation as concerning the same, Stephen being demaunded his opinion in the case, saide he thought it to daungerous a matter for the Neapolitanes, to tourne the brant of so great a warre vpon themselves, and therefore he wished them by some composition or other, to prouide for their sauegarde. This counsell was furthered also by one Antiochus a Syzian borne, who had continued longe tyme at Naples as in the waye of traffique & marchandise, a man of great wealth & of much credit among the Neapolitanes, he by perswading the lyke that Stephan had done, had moued many to be of his opinion: the people also & the commons of the citie were desirous of the same. In so much that shoutes were openly heard

## Of the warre of the

heard crying out to haue the gates set open and Belisarius let in . There were about eyght hundred Gothes in garrison , who albeit that it greued them to see these things, neuerthelste for as muche as they durste not withstand the wyll of the people , gathered themselves together . Pastor and As-

The craftye  
dealing of  
Asclepiodotus  
and Pastor.

clepiodotus citizens of Naples beyng frends of the Gothes, and therefore sorre to see the present estate of the cite altered, when they sawe howe the people were bent, durste not openly gain- say theyr desyres , but wrought by an ouerthwart meanes to breake thagrement. And therevppon allowyng and prayling openly all that was determined in the assemblye, as though it had lyked them verie well, they counselled to knitte by the matter stronglye with many bandes and couenants, requirynge an othe for performinge of the same. The articles that they had deuised were suche as they thought Belisarius woulde not haue consented vnto

Fayre wordes  
make fooles  
— fayne & wyse  
men to some  
rymes.

## Gothes in Italy. 16.

to, in especialle seynge he shoulde be  
sworne to the performaunce of them.  
Wherefore in as much as they seemed  
to speake these thynges of good wyll  
to the people, they obteyned to haue  
the decrees made accordynge to theyr  
owne deuise. And therevppon all  
thynges were penned and sayre wor-  
des engroced. Stephan was sent with  
the Booke from the Citte to Belisa-  
rius. Who after he hadde perused the  
same agreed to euery article, and offe-  
red to be sworne for the keeping of the.  
Stephan returned and brought worde  
thereof into the citie. Whereat the peo-  
ple greatly reioysing began to runne  
to the gates, sayinge that Belisarius  
should be let in. Pastor and Aselepio-  
dorus seying this, when they perceyued  
that their first crafts toke no place, cal-  
led together the Gothes and citizens of  
Naples such as were of their owne facti-  
on. Declaring vnto them that it was a  
folly to lose the towne at the pleasure  
of the vnskyllfull multitude.

The malice of  
Pastor and Ase-  
clepiodorus  
brusteth out.



## Of the warre of the

For what man had so lytle witte that could not vnderstand, that if Belisarius were in any hope at all of winning the citie, he would neuer haue consented to tharticles that were sent vnto him. But now because he was out of all hope, he had graunted to those things which he would not stand to, to the intent to make them traitours at theyr vttermoste peryll. For if he bare them so much good wyll as he pretended, he would not haue there taried to surpryse the by subteltie, but would haue kept on his way to trye the matter by battel against Theodatus and his Gothes. By alledgyng these and suche other thyngs, they both perswaded the Citizens to make resistance, and also encouraged the Gothes to stand to the defence of the Citie. Besides this they armed the Iewes, of the which ther was a great multitude in Naples, & caused them to take their parte. By meanes whereof the rest of the citizens were put in feare, and all the communicatio  
and

## Gothes in Italy. 17

and couenaunts with Belisarius wer broken. Belisarius therefore after that time addressed himselfe to the siege. Oftentymes when he attempted to winne it by assaulte, he was put to the repulse with great losse and peryll of hys souldiours. For the walles of Naples are partly enuironed with the sea, and partly do stand bypon high and steepe places, so that it is a very harde matter to scale them. The conduit pipes by which water ranne into the citie, albeit they were all broken by Belisarius: yet not withstanding it seemed to be no great discommoditie to them that were besieged, because they had manye Welles in the towne, so that they could want no water. But most of all hurted them the hope of helpe to come, for as much as thei had sent their Ambassadors to Rome for ayde against their enemies. Now as Belisarius was in maner past hope, and thought to haue broken vp his siege, Fortune wonderfully opened the way

C.1.

of

## Of the warre of the

of conquest vnto him. There was a water chancel cut deepe into the grounde by which water was wont to be coueyed into the citie. This at the beginning of the siege had Belisarius broken (as he had done other before). A certain souldier of Clandiople by chaunce entering into the same, went in it hard to the walles of the citie. There was at the place where it went vnder the wall a stone not layed by mannes hand but of nature, through the whiche there was a hole boored to let the water into the citie. But the hole was not so wyde that a man might enter in at it. The which when the souldier had well viewed, he perceyued that if the hole in the stone were made wyder, they myght haue passage into the Citie. And therevppon he made Belisarius priue to all that he hadde scene. The Captaine greatly reioysing thereat, and promisyng great rewardes, hade the souldyer choosc some of hys fellows to helpe hym, and to open the stone

Good fortune  
of Belisarius.

stone more, not by diggyng and hea-  
wyng least the noyse of the strykyng  
should be wray them, but by spling and  
scrapyng and that very softly. Like as  
the Captayne commaunded so the  
souldyer dyd. To be short, through the  
continuall and diligent paynestakyng  
of the souldyer it was brought to that  
poynt, that a man in harness wyth  
hys sworde and hys target in his hand  
myght easily go through. When the  
matter stood in thys case, Belisarius  
perceyvinge he shoulde bee may-  
ster of the Citie when he lyst hymselfe, the clementie  
and lothe that hys souldyers shoulde and mercy of  
sacke it, called out Stephan vnto him Belisarius,  
againē, and putte hym in remem-  
braunce of the miserable chaunces  
that are wonte to happen vnto Cities  
that are taken perforce, as the slaugh-  
ter of men, the rauyng of women  
at every Whorettes pleasure, the bur-  
nyng of houses, the sackyng and r-  
uyn of all places, and all other kyndes  
of mischieses.

C.ij. Where



## Of the warre of the

Wherefore he tolled the Neapolitans to haue respect vnto them selues, and not to abyde the bittermost at their perill, so; as yet they had tyme to repent them of their folly, Stephan hearynge these thinges, at his retourne declared the same to his citizens with sighes and teares. But they despising his wordes had hym in derision so; his labour.

The meane  
whereby Be-  
lisarius won  
Naples.

Belisarius therefore executyng his prepened purpose, when he had fully determined to take the citie, prouided for the same in this maner. As soone as euer it beganne to be darke, he chose out foure hundred souldiours, commaundyng euery one of them to put on hys harnesse and to take his swordes and hys target in his hande, and being so armed in a readinesse, to kepe themselves close without noyse, vntyll they had knowledge what they should doe. He appoynted leaders of them Magnus and Ennas stout men, in whose puissance he dyd putte muche confidence. When it was now past myd-  
nyght,

## Gothes in Italy. 19

night, he disclosed the matter to the  
 leaders, and shewing them the place  
 commaundeth them to lead the soul-  
 diers through the channell by torches  
 lyght. And as soone as they were got-  
 ten into the citie, he taught them what  
 they should doe, wyllyng them to take  
 some part of the walles, and to geue to-  
 ken thereof by the sound of a trumpet.  
 He him selfe had prepared befoze hand  
 a great sort of ladders to scale the wals  
 with, commaunding all his armye to  
 be ready in their harness, wherof he had  
 the nymblest and best practised aboute  
 his owne persone. Whyles he was  
 thus aboute his matters, many of the  
 souldiers that were with Magnus re-  
 tyed backe for feare of the daunger,  
 and could not be made to go forwarde,  
 neyther by fayre meanes nor by force.  
 Whome Belisarius sent away wyth  
 great rebuke, supplying their roomes  
 with two hundred of them that he had  
 about him. Whpon the which repoebe-  
 even they that before refused to go, for-

Shame sur-  
 mounteth  
 dread of daun-  
 ger.

C. iij. loved.

## Of the warre of the

loved. The souldiers went a long way  
a blinde way in the chanel. For it en-  
ded not at the wall, but led further in  
to the citie, being vaulted ouer aloft  
with Backe. It so much that the souldi-  
ers wist not where they were, untill  
they espyed the skye at the ende of the  
vault. When they perceyued themsel-  
ues to be in the middes of the citie, one  
of the which place it was a hard mat-  
ter for them to escape, because they had  
ysauoured climbing vp vpon the high  
walles where it was enclosed round  
about. Nevertheless at length when  
one had helped by another & all were  
come out, they went to the walles  
there hauing slayne the watchmen  
toke two tores, & from thens gaue  
a signe by sounding a trumpet, and  
making a greate shoute. By and by  
Belisarius made toward the same  
places, and setting by ladders commaun-  
ded his souldiers to scale the towne. In  
the same place happened much trouble  
& much tarying, by reason the ladders  
(being

Naples is ta-  
ken.  
1000

## Gothes in Italy. 20

(being made secretly by anie) were not able to reach the toppes of the wall. By meanes whereof they were driuen of necessitie, to bynde two ladders one at the end of another, & so to get vp. This was done on the northside of the towne, and at the same instant was a sharpe encounter at the other side of y<sup>e</sup> towne that is toward the sea. For in the same place fought a multitude of Jewes, leud & desperat persōs, such as hoped for no fauour nor mercy if y<sup>e</sup> citie were taken. And therefore they stood stoutly at defens, geuing no place of entrance to the enemye. Another part of the host had set fier on y<sup>e</sup> East gate, & made hast to breake into the citie. In the meane season the day began to breake, & the soldiers y<sup>e</sup> had scaled by ladders, had broken open a gate to let in tharmy, & therewithall thother company rushed in at the East gate y<sup>e</sup> was before set on fier. Then was there running through the citie, and all places were defiled with slaughter and ranshyng.

C. liij.

But

The desperate fighting of the iewes.

remains of the  
city of Jerusalem  
after the siege  
of 70 AD



## Of the warre of the

But inesppecially those souldyers play-  
ed the Butchers, whose brothers or  
kinnsfolke had bene slaine in the former  
conflictcs by the Neapolitans a boutc  
the Citie. For they after that the towne  
was taken, vsed the victorie very cru-  
elly, sparing no age yong nor old man  
nor woman, And the Jewes, whiche  
defended that part of the Towne that  
is toward the sea, when all the rest of  
the towne was taken, stode neuer the  
lese styfly at their defens, neyther gane  
they ouer befoze that the souldiers con-  
uyng aboute the Citie, assayled them  
behynd. Then was enterans made on  
that parte of the Citie also, and euery  
place was replenished with slaughter  
and sacking. But Belisarius himself  
after the taken of Naples, vsed the vic-  
torie veri gently, For after that weapō  
was ones layd out of hand, he suffe-  
red not any Citizen to be eyther slayne  
or taken prysoner, and he restozed the  
women to their husbandes and paren-  
tes vnravished and vndefiled at all.

Toward

The clemen-  
tie and gentle  
vsing of the  
victorye by  
Belisarius.

## Gothes in Italy.

21

Towarde the Gothes also which were there in garrison, he shewed no manner of cruelty. As for Pastor and Asclepiodotus the Authours and causes of so great mischiefs, not Belisarius, but the people of the towne themselves did iustice vpon. Who the next day after the taking of the citie, ranne to theyr houses and finding Asclepiodotus at home kylled hym and dretwe hym thorough the citie. But they coude not finde Pastor. For he euen in the very tumult of the taking of the citie, either wilfully slew him selfe, or ells dyed so: despairo and sorow of mynde. Yet notwithstandinge the people bearynge a deadly hatred against him, neuer left seeking him, vntill such tyme as they sawe hys dead carcas wyth their eyes, neither coude they be satisfied, but that they tare hys bodye in peeces euery member from other. And Belisarius did beare with theyr outragious dealinge, for the euyl whych they had committed, vpon whom such cruelty was extended.

Euyll counsel  
worst to the  
geuers therof

**Of the warre of the**  
extended . Naples therfore was by  
this meanes bothe taken and saued.

**The.vij. Chapter.**

**T**he Gothes kyll Theodatus and set vp Vi-  
gigis to be theyr Kyng, Vigigis maketh an  
oration to the Senate and people of  
Rome, and leadeth awaye the chiefe of  
them with him for pledges, he marryeth  
the daughter of Amulusuentha and en-  
tereth in league with the Frenche men.  
Belisarius cometh to Rome, whiche is  
yelded to hym by the Citizens, he forti-  
fiethe and victaileth the cite and getteth  
certaine townes from the Gothes.

**T**he Gothes that dwelte at  
Rome and other places there-  
aboutes, hearyng of these thin-  
ges that were done at Naples, were  
stryken with great feare and mistruste  
in them selues. For they beleued un-  
doubtedly that Belisarius would come  
against them. Wherefore encoura-  
ging one another, and calling forth the  
rest that were men of warre of theyr  
owne nation, they encamped them-  
selues betwene the cities of Anagnine  
Taracina.

## Gothes in Italy.

22

Taracina: Where when the chief men  
 of warre of the Gothes were assem-  
 bled together, finding great faulte  
 with the former misgouernment & pre-  
 sent cowardnesse of Theodatus, final-  
 ly they made insurrection against him  
 in the campe, and set vp Vitigis to be  
 their kynge. This Vitigis was not  
 bozne of the blood royall, but he had al-  
 wayes bene knowen for a stout Cap-  
 tain & a good man of warre, & through  
 his valiaunt behauiour he had purcha-  
 sed much honour & authoritie. Theoda-  
 tus when he hard thereof, stole priuely  
 away & fled toward Canenna with all  
 the speede he could make. But the new  
 king sending of his gards immediatly af-  
 ter him, overtooke him by the way & kil-  
 led him. After this Vitigis came to Ro-  
 me, & there making an oration to the  
 Senate & the people, put the in remem-  
 brance of the benefites of Theodoric,

The election  
 of Vitigis  
 with the depo-  
 sition & death  
 of Theodatus

The oration  
 of Vitigis to  
 the Romans.

119110

those



## Of the warre of the

those things which had lately hapened  
chauced not thzough the imbecillitie &  
weakenes of their nacion, but because  
that the Gothes could not find in their  
harts to loue & obey Theodatus. But  
now considering they agreed all in one  
will & dzeu all by one lyne, cleane con-  
trary effects must nedes followe. And  
therefoze no man should be able to at-  
tempt any alteration hereafter in Ita-  
ly, but that he shoulde be met with to  
his cost. Al these things he did discourse  
before Liberius bishop of Rome. And  
foz because he was but a newe founde  
kyng, he caused the bishop & the people  
to swere to be trew vnto him. Foz the  
more assuraunce wherof, he chose ma-  
nye of the Senators and people of  
Rome, whome he ledde with him as  
pledges, committing the charge of the  
citic to one of his noble men called Lu-  
deris, with whome he left foure thou-  
sande chosen souldyers to keepe Rome  
withall. He hym selfe with the residue  
of his army made towarde Rauenna.

When

## Gothes in Italy. 23.

When he came thither, to the entent  
the krooꝛe to establishe his estate, he  
tooke in mariage the doughter of A<sup>l</sup> virigis mari-  
muluscentha nece unto the late Theo<sup>eth</sup>,  
dozich, whome Theodatus had kept  
in warde lyke a prissoner. And so by all-  
yng him self with the blood ropall, he  
aduaunced the honour and dignitie of  
his crowne. This done, he ceased not  
to muster the Gothes through all his  
realme, and to furnysh them through-  
ly with horse and harnesse, and vigi-  
lantly to prouide for all kynde of mu-  
nitions and artillerie for the warres.  
But as Altigis was aboute to assem-  
ble the Gothes that were about the ri-  
uer Po and the citie Daue and other  
places in Libardy of which there was  
great poweꝛ and an huge number, a  
stoppe was call in hys way, namely the  
feare of the French nacion. For at that  
tyme they had extended their domini-  
on euen vnto the Alpes, and on thys  
side the Alpes the Gothes possessed al.  
These two nations were scarce friends  
one

Vitigis entre-  
reth in league  
wyth the  
Frenchmen.

**O**f the warre of the  
one to another, but rather more then  
halfe enemies through priuie hartbur-  
nyng among them selues. Further-  
more it was well known, that them-  
perour had lately sollicitated the French  
men to make warre against the Go-  
thes. For the which causes Vitigis sen-  
ding his Ambassadors into Fraunce  
endeuored to rid himself of that feare,  
the which he at length obteyned by en-  
tring in league and frendshippe with  
them. Whyle Vitigis was laying for  
these things before hand, in the meane  
season Belisarius hauynge refreshed  
and furnished his armie, determined  
to go to Rome. Wherevppon leaving  
Herodian with a garrison at Naples,  
and another garrison lyke wise at Cu-  
me, he with the residue marched to-  
ward Rome. His iorney lay by the way  
that leadeth from Rome into Latium.  
The Romans hearing of Belisarius  
approche, were nothing discontented  
therewith. It chanced so that one Fi-  
delis of Millaine (who in the tyme of  
Athalericke

## Gothes in Italy. 24.

Athalericke had bene steward of the kings house) departing frō Rome met with Belisarius, & counsailed him to bring his hoste with all speede nere to the citie, for he told him that the **Romains** were not minded to shut their gates against the emperours army. And in dede by al mens talke it was to be sene that the people were of the same mind with in the citie. With the which thinges the Gothes being sore dismayed that were left there in garrison, determined fully to go all awaye: saying the Captayn Luderis: who standing vpon his reputation, had rather to haue died then to abandon the tolon committed to his charge. The Romans gaue the Gothes free passage wout interruption. And so it fortuneth that at the very same day & houre that the Gothes went out of Rome at the gate of Flaminius, Belisarius entered in at the gate Colimontana, otherwise called Asnaria. After the Belisarius had ben receined into the tolon with great ioye & gladnes of all estates,  
he



## Of the warre of the

Belisarius for-  
rifieth and vic  
isyleth Rome

he made an oration before the Senate  
and the people, & afterward used great  
diligence in repairing the walles & for-  
tifying of the citie. For he not onely  
mended the walles and buylded bul-  
works in places convenient, but also  
cast vp trenches and rampyres aboute  
them. And moreouer conueyghed thi-  
ther great store of grayne by water,  
the which he caused to be layed vp in  
common graners. The Romaines al-  
though they wondered at the wisdom  
of their captaine, yet thei lyked not this  
his so exquisite diligence in fortifying  
of the citie. For so noble a captaine as  
he was beinge entered into Rome w<sup>th</sup>  
the emperours armye, ought not to  
thinke of beinge besieged, but of besie-  
ging others. Howbeit to say the trueth  
Belisarius weying with himselfe hys  
owne weakenes & the great power of  
the Gothes, did already in his mynde  
foresee what was lyke to ensue. And yet  
was he not altogether ydle in y<sup>e</sup> meane  
season, but by his petie captains Con-  
stantine

## Gothes in Italy.

25.

Constantine and Belias, the same time he recovered Parma, Spolet, & Peruse by compulsion. Also there was a battell fought against the Gothes not farre fro the citie of \* Peruse. For Vitigis immediately vppon intelligence of the reuolting of the Perusians, sent Anilas and Pyssa with an army into Tus- cane to the entent as well to kepe it in due obedience such as had not reuol- ted, as also to subdue againe suche as had forsaken their alleageaunce.

Belisarius gets  
tenth three  
townes from  
the Gothes.

\* Now called  
Perugio.

### The. viij. Chapter.

A battell is fought at Peruse betwene the Gothes and the Imperialles to the losse of the Gothes. Vitigis marchynge towarde Rome stayeth at the ryuer Anio, where the next day encountring wyth Belisarius he putteth hym to flyght and so proceedeth to the siege of Rome wyth two hundred thousande men.

There was at Peruse Constantine one of Belisarius captaines, and he had assembled thither all

D.i.

hts

## Of the warre of the

A battell be-  
twene the  
Gothes and  
the imperials

hys men of warre slaying a fewe soul-  
diers that he hadde lefte in garrison at  
Spolet. Now at such time as the Go-  
thishe armye approached and was come  
almoste hard to the walles of Peruse,  
Constantine with his men in order of  
battel readie to fyght, pursued out of the  
Citie and set vpon the Gothes. Great  
was thencounter with much force and  
puissans on bothe sydes. The Gothes  
were greatly furthered by their multi-  
tude, and the souldiers of Constantine  
by the aduantage of the place, & thassis-  
ters of the Citie at hand. After longe  
fychtinge, the Gothes at length were  
ouercome & put to flight, great slaugh-  
ter was made of them and many were  
taken prisoners, amonge whō Auslas  
and Pylla the Captaynes were taken  
and sent to Rome vnto Belisarius.  
Atigis therefore hauinge besydes the  
losse of his towne receiued mozeouer  
this slaughter, thoughte it was not to  
make any further delaye, but with all  
the power of the Gothes that he was  
able

# **Gothes in Italy.** 26.

able to raise, set forward to the warres. When he removed from Ravenna toward Rome, he had in his hoste. CC. thousand fighting men, of which the most part were armed in Almain rivetts. With this so huge hoste he marched toward Rome in such a terrible manner, & with such a speed, that it was to be doubted least that Belisarius would not have abidden his coming. And therefore he made not any stay either at Spoleto, Veruse, or Parma, but kept on his way still toward Rome. Belisarius when he perceived so great a burst of warres turned upon his necke, commaunded Constantine and Vellas to returne to him out of hand, with such power as they had aboute them. Constantine obeyed his commaundement and came with his army forthwith out of Thuscane to Rome. But it was somewhat later ere that Vellas did set out of Parma, in so much that he was entangled with the first foreriders of the Gothes. For Vitigis way lay hard

Vitigis marched toward Rome with 100000. soldiers.



Of the warre of the  
vnder Parma. Whether as sone as þ  
Carrouers were come, Belias yssued  
out of the city and skirmished w them,  
& he put many of their troopes to flight  
and slew diuers of the. Neuertheles by  
reason of resorte of mo & mo stil to þres  
rowe, he was compelled to withdrau hi  
self again into the citie. From whence  
he made hast to Rome & bare tidinges  
that þ Gothes were at hande & within  
kenning. The Gothes passing by Par  
ma went through the country of þ Sa  
bines into the fields of Rome. When  
they came nere the towne they staid at  
the riuer Anio. For belisarius had forti  
fied the bridge on both sides þ water w  
bullwarks & enclosures, & had set a gar  
rison of souldiers to kepe it. By meanes  
wherof þ Gothes at their first coming  
being not able to get ouer, encamped  
theselues beyond the riuer Anio. But  
þ next night folowing they þ were set  
to kepe the bridge, being dismayed at þ  
number & fiercenesse of the barbarous  
people, forsoke the towres & bullwarks  
of

The shameful  
flight of the  
souldiers of  
Belisarius.

## Gothes in Italy 27.

of the bydge, & stealing priuely away  
 went into Cápantie for feare least Be-  
 lisarius should punish the for their la-  
 bour. Belisarius was minded to haue  
 pitched his campe by the riuer Anio di-  
 rectly against the campe of the Gothes,  
 to the intent to haue detained them the  
 longer in the same place. And therefore the  
 next day he went thither w<sup>th</sup> a g<sup>d</sup>. horse-  
 men to view the country & the Deamea-  
 mour of his enemies & also to chuse a  
 meete ground to encampe in. As he  
 was going thither, when he came al-  
 most at the riuer, contrary to his expec-  
 tation he met w<sup>th</sup> the Gothe horse  
 men. For the Gothes but euen a litle  
 while before, perceiving the bulwarkes  
 of the bydge to be abandoned, had bro-  
 ken open the gates and the barres,  
 and had passed ouer the Riuer in  
 greate number. Whose sodayne ap-  
 proche vpon Belisarius other wyse  
 then he looked for, constrained hym  
 whether he woulde or no to put hym-  
 selfe to the encounter.

An encounter  
 vnlooked for,

D.iii.

At

## Of the warre of the

At the beginning Belisarius executed nothing but the office of a Captaine, encouraging and commaunding his souldiers and shewing what everie man should doe. But when he saw his men overlayed & like to go by the worse end of the staffe, then was he of necessity compelled to leaue the office of a Captaine, and to playe the stout souldiour. For he was fayne to put himselfe into the forefront of the battell, and there to laye his hands about him stoutly and valiantly as other of his souldiers. The which daye surely he was in great danger vpon such occasion. He had a goodly horse, vpon which he was commonly wont to ryde, of colour bay w<sup>th</sup> a white lyffe from his foreheade downe to the nostrelles, as he fought vpon the same horse among the foremost in the battell, certain runnagats knowing him, cried out to strike the Male. (For so doe the Gothes terme a bay horse in their language,) & there was none other noise ouer all the fyeild but to strike the Male.

## Gothes in Italy 28.

By meanes whereof it came to passe,  
 that all the brunt of the battel was tur-  
 ned vpon Belisarius. And vndoubtedly Danger the  
 if a puissant band of his berpe familiar whetstone of  
 frendes had not clustered aboute hym courage.  
 and styked notably to him, yea and w-  
 their owne bodies and their owne ar-  
 mour, kept of a thousand strokes and  
 a thousande weapons bothe from the  
 horse and from Belisarius himself al-  
 so, it had neuer bene possible for hym  
 to haue escaped. But as at y<sup>e</sup> time he  
 was valiantly defended, both by his  
 own prowesse fighting most expertly &  
 comingly, and also by the helpe of his  
 frends and familiars, who with incre-  
 dible loue dynged fast aboute hym. In  
 this place manye of Belisarius berpe  
 frends were slain, and inesppecially one  
 Marcellinus a man of singular actiuity  
 who fighting about Belisarius, after  
 that he had shewed manye proofes of his  
 manhood and prowesse, and slaine ma-  
 ny of the Gothes, at the last being very  
 sore wounded fell downe dead.



## Of the warre of the

length such as were about Belisarius making pzeale vpo their enemies, put the to open flight, & pursued them hard to the brydge. But the footemen y<sup>e</sup> stood at the brydge recountred Belisarius & his men, & easly put them backe. The horsemen seying y<sup>e</sup>, turned again & assailed the behind, by means wherof they were of necessity compelled to withdraw themselves for their own saufgard vnto a higher ground. There also the encounter of horsemen being renewed, & the number of the enemies still encreasing, after y<sup>e</sup> many had bene slaine on both partes, at length they were forced to fly toward Rome vppon the spurre. They ranne towarde the gate that is commonly called Vincian. The Gothes chased Belisarius hard to the gate in so much y<sup>e</sup> some were stricken from the wall. There was also muche a doe in the same place. For the Romans that kept the walles, for feare of their enemies so nere at hand, durste not open the gate. Neither was Belisarius him

Belisarius is  
compelled to  
flye.

selfe,

## Gothes in Italy. 29.

selfe knowen, albeit he called aloud vnto them, bicause the Sunne was then downe, & he soze disfigured with duste & swette. Wherefore when they had cast themselves in a ring befoze the gate & could not be let in, & that the enemy was hard at their backs, Belisarius encouraging his men, gaue a new charge vpon his enemies, & putting the to flight diuice them far fro the gate. So when he had dispersed his enemyes, he was then perfectly knowen, & led his souldiers into the citie. The feyght of this day was very soze and variable. For it beganne anone after the sonne rising, & it ended not vntil it was darke night. Belisarius by the iudgement of al me was deemed the best warrior that day that was on his syde. And amonge the Gothes, Mambrias. When Belisarius was returned into the Citie, he commanded as well his owne souldyers as the Colonesemen to keepe watche on the walles that nyght.

Belisarius putteth the Gothes to flight.

D. 6.

Distri.

## Of the warre of the

Distributinge the gates to his Cap-  
taines euery one, one to kepe. Geuyng  
them charge that if any alarme were  
geuen, no man should styre out of the  
place where he was appoynted. The

A larmes ge-  
uen to the Ci-  
tie of Rome.  
in the nyght.

same night many Alarmes were geue  
and diuers of theym false. For it was  
cried through the Citie that the enemye  
was entred in at the gate of Janicula,  
and thereupon weapon was fearefully  
taken in hand. And the noyse could not  
be stynted, untill such time as messen-  
gers comming from thence, brought  
word that all was quiet and no enemy  
sene or heard of there. At the gate Sa-  
laria was another Alarme, & that not  
wythoute some cause. For the Bothes  
comming to the gate in the night, cal-  
led to the Romaines that stode vpon  
the walls, & there one of them named  
Bachus a mā well knownen in Rome  
whom Alitigis had sent thither for the  
same purpose, spake vnto them saying  
How is it with you ye Romaines are  
ye not ashamed of your follye: to com-  
mit

The wordes  
of Bachus to  
the Romanes.

## Gothes in Italy. 30.

with your selues to the tulcion of a few  
 Grekythe men, mariners, and plaiers,  
 of enterludes, & god for nothing els,  
 despising þ power of the Gothes, whi-  
 che euen at their very fyrste comming  
 haue put them to flighte and beseiged  
 them: Surely the Gothes haue not de-  
 serued that ye shoulde worke so greate  
 treason against them. But repent and  
 amend, for this is thonly way for you  
 to escape, yf you wyl open the gate for  
 the Gothes to enter in, not against you  
 but against those Grekes. But if ye be  
 so mad to persist in your folly, loke as-  
 suredlye for such warre at the Gothes  
 hands, as wilbe to whote for you to a-  
 byde. Thys oure kynge Vitigis com-  
 manded to be told vnto you. The Ro-  
 maines made none aunswere at all to  
 his wordes, But as sone as it was re-  
 ported that þ Gothes were there, there  
 was running thether from all parts of  
 the citie, The Gothes hauing taryed a  
 litle whyle, returned to their kinges  
 tent which was betwene the citie and  
 the

X is a resort, a running, b.



**Of the warre of the**  
the river. And thus passed ouer y firste  
night. The next day the Gothes seying  
no body come forth to giue them battel  
in the field, adressed themselves to the  
siege. The order wherof was this.

The. ix. Chapter.

¶ The order of the seige of Rome, the  
politique prouision of Belisarius for  
the defence of the same, what engi-  
nes the Gothes made for to assaule  
the same, and of their goynge to the  
assaule.

The siege of  
Rome.

**T**hey pitched theyr tentes in syre  
places about the citie, fro the way  
of flaminus, vnto the waye that  
leadeth to pyenele. This campe bele-  
ged fise gates of the citie. Afterward  
they embattelled the .vii. campe on the  
further syde of the byrge pilatus.  
This last Campe beleiged the gate of  
Aurelius and cutte of the wayes that  
leade ouer the Ryuer Tyber. They  
fortified theyr campes with diches and  
trenches and turrettes of timber. And

## Gothes in Italy. 31.

as wel on the oneside as on the other of the Tyber they made hawocke of all þe came in their waye. Belisarius on the contrary part prouided in this wise for the defence of the city. The gate called Pinciana which was directly againste the greater campe of the Gothes, together w<sup>th</sup> the next gate vnto it on þe right had called Salaria, & whatsoeuer was on that part of the walles therabouts, Belisarius toke vnto himselfe tokepe. The gate towarde Pzeneste he committed to Bellas. The gate of Flaminius whiche is on the left hande of the Pincian gate, he deliuered to Costantin: and at euerye other of the gates he set a keeper. The Gothes goyng about the Citie brake all the Conduittes. There were of theym in all fourtene made of wonderfull works, by the which water was conueyed into the Citie. By the breakyng of these, the Romanes were not so greatlye afflicted w<sup>th</sup> scarcetye of water, as w<sup>th</sup> want of cornemylles.

The conduits  
about the  
Citty.

## Of the warre of the

For the conduit that ranne downe fro  
the toppe of Janiculum, throughte the  
furtherside of Tiber into the city, run  
ning swiftly downe the stepe hyll, dyd  
driue many mylles. The lyke commo-  
dity of grinding was also ministred by  
other of the conduits in diuers places.  
The which being then broke, brought  
great distresse vpon them that were be-  
seiged. Against this displeasure Belisa-  
rius prouided this remedie. Two ligh-  
ters with a space betwene theym for a  
whele to goe in, were fastned together  
with strong rafters of timber, vpon the  
which the milles were set and so dꝛue  
with the swiftnes and violence of the  
streame, and the lighters were stayed  
with Cables streyned hard and made  
fast on both sydes of the Ryuer. These  
lyghters he placed harde by the firste  
bydgc that leadeth ouer Tiber. After  
those he set other lyghters on a rowe.  
And least the enemye might hurte the  
lighters by casting downe fyre or other  
stufte from alofte, there were theynes  
of

A prouision  
for grinding  
of corne.

of yron drawe by the brydge to receiue  
all such gere, and men set on both sides  
to take the same & cary it away. Thus  
was good prouision made to supply the  
want of milles, for those lighters suf-  
ficed to grynd as much as they would.  
As for the want of water, that dyd the  
ryuer Elber supplye. Belisarius had  
on diuers places of the walles deuised  
many engines to strike and put backe  
thenemy withall. On the other side the  
Gothes prouided great store of artille-  
rie and engines for the winning of the  
Citie. The engins were these. Fyyste  
solowr battell Hammes whiche were  
made after this fashon. Foure postes  
of timber of lyke hygh equallye distant  
are sette square one ageinste another.  
These pylles are fastened with eyght  
ouerwayes foure at the toppe & foure  
at y foote, so that it standeth as it were  
a pretye square house. The same is co-  
uerd aboue with leather to the entent  
that such as are within it should not be  
hurte from the walles. Aloft is laide a  
beame

Engines for  
to assault the  
towne,  
The battell  
Rara.



## Of the warre of the

beame ouerthwart at thende whereof  
hangeth downe another beame as it  
were to the middell of y<sup>e</sup> pillars fastned  
w<sup>th</sup> plates of yron, y<sup>e</sup> which hath a great  
square head of stelelike vnto an anuile.  
The whole engine is driven vpon foure  
wheles fastened in the feete of pillars.  
When it is remoued fro<sup>m</sup> place to place  
there are not fewer then 11. souldyers  
within it to drive it forward. Who af-  
ter the time they haue brought it nere  
vnto the walle, doe with a certayne  
wynch wey vp the foresaid beame that  
lyeth ouerthwart, and when it is aloft  
doe let it fall with all the whole swaye  
that it hath. When the head of y<sup>e</sup> beame  
being let downe, partlye with violence  
and partly with weight falling vpon y<sup>e</sup>  
wall, dothe batter and breake in peces  
al that euer it lighteth vpon. Moreouer  
the Gothes made Turretes of Tym-  
ber of lyke heigh with the walles, the  
whiche went vpon fyue wheles a  
pece. Also they prepared a great num-  
ber of shaking ladders, together with  
an

The great  
force of the  
battel Ram.

## Gothes in Italy. 33.

an innumerable sorte of faggottes of  
shrubbes and strawe to fyl vp the dy-  
ches. When all thynges were in suf-  
ficient readinesse, Altigis commaun-  
ded all hys men to be in armour by the  
bryake of the next daye, whom he de-  
uided into companyes, appoyntyng  
what he would haue every man to doe  
The Gothes were verie glad of it  
and wonderfull desyrous of thassault,  
some carryng faggotts, some bearing  
skalyng Ladders and other some dy-  
uyng the engines toward the walles.  
Belisarius stode bypon the banure  
befoze the gate wyth the tallest men  
that he coulde chose oute in all hys  
holle, geuyng all the reste of hys  
retinue charge, not to slyre oute  
of theyr places before he gaue theym  
warnyng. The Turrettes ( whi-  
ch I tooke you that the Gothes had  
prepared ) were drawen wyth Dr-  
en and sette before the reste of the o-  
ther engynes.

Thassault of  
Rome.

Thvnskilful-  
nesse of the  
Goths.

C.i.

The

## Of the warre of the

The which thing whē Belisarius behelde, he laughed at the simplicitie of the Gothes, that they should thinke naked Men able to dialwe an engine against armed enemies. And therupon he commaunded all hys men to discharge their arrowes at them, the which beyng done and Thoren forthwpyth liaine, the engine stood still and coulde be remoued no further. Such as caried skalinge ladders and saggottes to fill bp the dyches, being repulsed with the number of weapons commynge from the bamure, coulde neyther fyl the dyches, nor gette vnto the walles, nor yet brynge the battell Hammes nere. Neuertheles the battell of the Gothes abode by it, and castinge their sheldes ouer their heades, sometyme wpyth platne force came harde to their enemies, howbeit they were neuer able to winne the bamure. Thencounter was with arrowes, dartes, Jauelings pykes and all other kind of artillerie.

The

## The .x. Chapter.

The maner of the assault, the description of the rumber of the Emperour Adrian and the detacing of the same, the repulse of the Gothes, the murmuringe of the Romaines agaynst Belisarius, wherupon he aduertiseb themperour of his peril & necessity.

Wyle these things were in doing at the Pincian & Salaria gates, The continuance of the assault, Rome was assaulted in three other places. For Vitigis setting parte of his armie to kepe Belisarius occupied, went hymselfe with a number of souldiers to the gate that leadeth to prenestre. And at the same instant another companie of the Gothes assaulted the gate of Aurelius. Another sorte of them endeuored to burst in at the gate that is on y<sup>e</sup> tope of Janiculum. Thus was Rome assaulted in foure places at ones at the gates Pinciana and Salaria which Belisarius himselfe kepte, at the gate prenestine where Belisarius



## Of the warre of the

flood, and at the gates of Aurelius and  
 Janiculum. But the Gothes that as-  
 saulted Janiculum were easlye put  
 backe. For the place is stepe and vnea-  
 sie to come vnto, insomuch that a man  
 could not well get to the wall though  
 there were no bodye to let hym. And  
 therefore must their enterpryse nedes  
 be to none effect, the place beyng de-  
 fended by Paule one of Schisarius cap-  
 taines with a puissant band of souldi-  
 ers. At the gate of Aurelius was some  
 what more daunger. The waye was  
 vaulted ouer that leadeth to the church  
 of Saynct Peter thapostle. The Go-  
 thes hydyng themselves in the sayde  
 porche, as they espyed tyme for  
 theyr purpose, brake sodaynely oute  
 of theyr ambushe, and in all haste  
 made toward Adrians Pyle to winne  
 it. And they dyd so muche wyth theyr  
 Ladders, that at the syt they brunte they  
 tooke the vttermoſte wall whyche en-  
 closeth the Pyle and was four square.

The assaulting  
 of Adrians  
 Pyle.

Thys

## Gothes in Italy 35.

This Wyll was the sepulchre of the Emperour Adrian buylded of moste excellent and costly workemanshippe. The description of Adrian as sumbe.  
The fyrste circuyt was made square, all of whyte Marble of the Ilande Paros, garnyshe throughout with most exquisite workes and portraytures. In the myddes of this square ryseth vpp as it were a tower of a verry great heygth, and of such a breadeth that a man were scarce able to throlve a stone directelye from the one syde to the other of the flooze that was on the toppe. It hathe a bydge leadynge from thence ouer the Tyber into the Cytie. For the Cytie endethe at the Ryuer Tyber, and thys is on the furthersyde of the Ryuer. Yet notwithstandinge bycause it had a bydge stretchynge harde to the walles of the Cytie, and was (as it were) a certayne Towre or bulwarke, Belisarius prouyded before hand to haue it well manned and

## Of the warre of the

Kept with his owne souldiers, committing the charge therof to Constantine. Constantine therefore when as a lytle before he sawe hys enemies passinge ouer the Riuer Liber in botes, to assault that part of the Citie which is betwene the fielde of Mars and the gate of Aurelius, fearing the lownesse of y<sup>e</sup> walles, (for they were not very strong and defensible theraboutes nere vnto the Riuer) ranne thither from Adri-  
ans pyle with a band of souldiers, lea-  
uing but a fewe behind him for the de-  
fence of the pyle. The Gothes herebp-  
on (as we said before) hauinge by mea-  
nes of thabsence of the Captaine gottē  
the outer circuit, endeuoized also to  
winne the pyle it selfe. The souldiers  
that were about, to thentent the more  
to endamage & repulse their enemies,  
committed an euill acte. There were  
in the toppe of the pyle on euerye syde,  
vpon the battlementes great ymages  
of men, horses, and chariottes, conning-  
ly deuised and excellentlye wroughte.  
Some

The defacing  
of an excellēt  
piece of work

Some of these the souldyers tumbled  
downe whole vppon their enemies, o-  
ther some thei brake in pieces to thew  
at the. And so whether it were through  
the rudenes or through the lewdnes of  
the souldiers, within few houers were  
destroyed the excellent inuentions of y  
conningest workmen in all the world,  
whiche cost so many yeres in making,  
and which were the greatest ornaments  
and the very beautie of the tymb.  
Constantyne haupnge in the meane  
whils repulsd the enemy from the ry-  
uer, hearing in what icoperdie the pile  
was, rescowed it by the brydge, and as-  
sailed his enemies from beneth, wher-  
with his owne souldiers were greatly  
recomforted and encouraged. By thys  
meanes the Pyle at length was saued,  
and the enemy repulsd. At the gate to  
ward pynesse also (where Alitigis and  
the Gothes that he brought with hym  
gaue the assault) was great danger.  
For not farre from the said gate was a  
place called Aluariu. The same was

Adrians pyle  
is rescowed.



Rome in dan-  
ger to be ta-  
ken by as-  
saulte.

**O**f the warre of the  
double walled , wyth a good space be-  
tweene the two walles. The ground be-  
tweene the was very plaine and leuell,  
and the walles somewhat weake. Al-  
tisigis therfore and the Gothes geuing  
assaulte to the uttermoste wall, albeit  
that there was paleant and manful de-  
fence made agaynst theym, yet they  
wanne it by fine force . Then Belias-  
(to whose charge that part was comit-  
ted) mistrusting that he was not able  
to continue long against so greate po-  
wer of his enemyes , sent worde in all  
haste to Belisarius in what perill he  
stood, desyring him to come to his res-  
cove at the speede he could make. Be-  
lisarius somewhat moved with the mat-  
ter, Left sufficient defence behind him  
at the gate Salaria, and hymselfe with  
a band of hys best souldyers ranne tho-  
rowe the Citie to the same place. At  
hys comminge thither the encounter  
was renewed a freshe , and the soul-  
diers beganne to take harte at the pre-  
sence

## Gothes in Italy.

37.

sence of theyr Captayne. The Gothes had vndermined the wall, and a great compaigne of them enterynge in at the breach stood betwene the two walles. By meanes whereof the seyghte was verie sharpe and cruell in the same place. In syne thassaulte came to this ende, that the Gothes were constrained to retyre out at the same gappe where they came in, with greate slaughter and losse of their people. As sone as they were gotten oute, theyr enemies purselwynge hard vppon them, chaced theym away, and set all theyr engines on fyre. The lyke chaunce happened vnto theym at the Gate Salaria. For the souldyers breakynge oute vppon theym, burnt vppe all theyr Turrets and other engynes. Thus was Rome in one daye bothe earnestlye assaulted in manye places at ones, and valiantlye defended. There were slayn at these assaultes aboute thre thousand Gothes, but yet the syege endured still.

The repulse  
of the gothes  
at the fyrste  
assaulte.

C. b.

The

## Of the warre of the

The Romaines  
murmured a-  
gainst Belisarius.

Belisarius writ  
eth to the  
Emperour.

The Romaines albeit they had Belisarius in great admiration for his prowess, yet they murmured against him in that against so great a puissance of y<sup>e</sup> Gothes, he had with so small a handful in comparison styred by so great warres & cast the Citie of Rome into such extreme perill and imminent daunger.

The which thinge Belisarius perceyving (for it was not done in huther murther) althoughe he had diuers other times befoze aduertised y<sup>e</sup> Emperour Justinian therof. Yet notwithstanding being as then greatly moued with the matter, he wrote moze earnestly vnto him, declaring the beseigement of the Citie of Rome, with the huge multitude of his enemies and the litle handful of his owne men. For he saide he had bene faine to diminish his armie that he brought forth with him, by leauing garrisons of souldiers at Panormus and Syracuse in Sicill: and by manninge of Naples, Cumæ, & other places in Italye, as neede required for  
they

## Gothes in Italy. 38.

their defence and saufgard : so that he had no mo then v. thousand remaining about him, and yet he was beseged w<sup>th</sup> an host of .CC. M. The Romaines vnacquainted with such perills, wold not endure the hazard of y<sup>e</sup> siege. As for his owne part, he had once vowed to spend his life in the Emperour Justinians seruire, thende whereof he passed not greatly whether it came sone or late. Whosbeit he said there was respecte to be had how much the same should rebound to the honour or dishonour of the Empire of Rome.

### ¶ The .xi. Chapter.

¶ The Emperour sendeth new succours in to Italy. Asinarius and Vligisalus Captaines of the Gothes besege Salons in Dalmatia, Vitigis winneth Portua, and causeth all the Romaines to be put to death whom he helde at Rauenna as hostages. Belisarius putteth all vnable folke for the wars oute of the citie for consuming of victalls, and banisheth the pope vpon suspicion of treason.

The



The Empe-  
rour sendeth  
new succours  
into Italye.

## Of the warre of the

**T**he Emperour Iustinian was be-  
rye sore moued at the receipte of  
these letters: and thereupon com-  
maunded that certayne souldoyers whi-  
ch had bene put in a readynesse befoze  
shoulde immediatly sayle into Italye, en-  
tending with all speede to leuie a grea-  
ter power. Valerian and Martia were  
appoynted Captaynes of those souldoy-  
ers whych he had alreadye prepared  
and whych he had wyntered all the dead  
tyme of that yere in Actoly and Acar-  
name. The newes herof beyng  
broughte to Rome, put the Romans  
in good comfozte lokyng for theyr ar-  
riuall as sone as the tyme of the yere  
wold serue. While these thyngs were  
a dooynge at Rome, Asinarius and  
Uligisalus Captaynes of the Gothes  
(whom Uligis had sent wyth an host  
of men into Dalmatia, appoyntyng  
to theym mozeouer for theyr moze  
strengthe a nauye of shippes), be-  
seyged Salona bothe by sea and lande  
For Constantian perceyvinge hym  
selfe

The Gothes  
besege Salona  
in Dalmatia.

## Gothes in Italy. 39.

selfe to weake to matche so huge a po-  
 wer as hys enemies had, fortified the  
 Citie thoroughly before hand and abode  
 the sege. Durynge the which, some-  
 tyme yssuynge oute of the towne, he  
 dyd greate harme to the Gothes both  
 by sea and by lande. In thys meane  
 time, Rome beganne to be more hard-  
 ly distressed by the sege. For Vitigis  
 after the time that he had taken so dis-  
 honorable repulse at the foresayde as-  
 saulte, beyng therewith somewhat  
 quickned, ceased not to seke & serche all  
 meanes possible to be deuysed, where-  
 by he myghte anoye hys besieged ene-  
 mies. There was a haven by the  
 Sea syde standinge on the ryght hand  
 of the ryuer Tyber, and adioynning  
 to the same a Cytie environed  
 wth a stronge wall. In the whyche  
 place were wonte to be sette a lande  
 all suche thynges as were broughte  
 by water: and from thence agayne  
 epyther by lande or by water were con-  
 ueyed to Rome.

Vitigis wyn-  
 neth Portua,

Vitigis

## Of the warre of the

Vitigis therfore sending thither sodainly a great number of his souldiers, assailed the said citie of Portua unwarres and wonne it ere the townsmen could put themselues in a readines to make resystens aganst so greate a power of the Gothes. By taking of this towne strait wayes ensued great distresse at Rome, when their vent of fetching in of corne and victiualls was ones stopped. For the Gothes leauing a garison of souldiers there, dyd kepe both the towne and the mouth of Liber suffering nothing to be conueyed in. It was not longe after but that Vitigis sent commaundement to Rauenna; that all the Citizens of Rome, which (as is declared) he led from thens and kept for hostages should be put to death. Many of them were of the nobility and many of the commonaltie (surely worthy personages) all the which tasted of one cup sayng a few who hauinge incling of the matter before, escaped by flight. Amonge the which number were Cereventinus

The cruell  
commaunde-  
ment of Viti-  
gis aganst the  
Romaine  
hostages.

## Gothes in Italy. 40.

Ceruentinus & Reparatus the brother  
of Vigilius, that was afterward pope.  
For they hauing warning therof, fled  
into Fraunce and saued their lynes,  
the rest were all put to death. In the  
tyme that the Romaines moored and  
lamented for the slaughter of theyr ci-  
tizens at Rauenna, there came ano-  
ther sorrow in the necke of it. For Be-  
lisarius fearinge least graine shoulde  
faile and ware scarce, made proclama-  
cion that the citizens shoulde send away  
their wiues and children, wyth al tho-  
ther multitude that was vnnete and  
vnable for the warres compelling bys  
men of warre also to doe the lyke whych  
had eyther Lemans or lackeys with  
in the towne. There were as yet two  
wayes left them to passe out at. One  
leading to Ostia by the left syde of the  
ryuer Tiber, and another through the  
fields cleane contrary from those places  
that were beseged by thencmy. For the  
Gothes (as we haue sayd) dyd not enui-  
ron the whole Citie with their spege,  
but



## Of the warre of the

but onely from the gate of Aurelius to the gate that goeth to Pyreneste. Beyond those boundes they durst not be bold to be ouer busye, or to stray ouer farre. For yf they aduētured ouer farre from the Campe, they lightly ranne in daunger of commynge short home, they could not stirre any great way on, lesse they went in greate compaynes. By meanes whercof it came to passe, that men myght at all tymes goe and come saufely by the waye of Appius and the way of Ostia. The Romaines therfore sent forth their wyues and children and all their other people that were vnnecesse for the warres. Wherof somme abode in Campanie, some at Naples and some in Sicill as eue ry man thought most for hys commodite and behoofe. At Rome Belisarius gaue strenghte commaundement and looked narrowly to it, that the roine was deuyded by the poll, to the entent y no waste nor spoyle should be made of it. The same time Belisarius banished

Belisarius de-  
uideth corne  
by the pole.

## Gothes in Italy. 41.

bannished the town Liberius the pope. A pope bani-  
 vpon suspicion of secret conspiracie shed vps sus-  
 with the Gothes. And anone after pition of trea-  
 was Vigilius consecrated high bishop son.  
 and installed in his see. Other of the  
 nobilitie of Rome also were bannished  
 vpon lyke presumption, of the which  
 number was one Marimus; whose  
 great graundfather after the death of  
 Valentinian had usurped the name  
 and dignitie of the Emperre.

The .xij. Chapter.

The ayde that the Emperour sent into Italy  
 cometh to Rome, Belisarius after practi-  
 sing his souldiers in skirmishes, encoun-  
 terech with the Gothes in a mayne battell,  
 and so overcome with great slaughter.

**W**hyle these thynges were a do-  
 ing, Martine & Valerian (whom  
 Justinian had sent forth as I the  
 had before) came vnto Rome, bring-  
 ing with them a thousand & sixe hun-  
 dred horsemen, the which for the most

New succours  
 cometh to  
 Rome.

F. J. parte

Of the batte of the  
 parte with all Hunnes. Belisarius  
 beinge recomfited by the coun-  
 mynge of these Souldyers, determi-  
 ned to order his warres after ano-  
 ther sort then he had done before. For  
 he was not minded to stand sylt with  
 in the Citye keepinge of the walles,  
 but every daye sent out his light horse  
 men and skirmished with his ene-  
 mies in open felde. By meanes  
 wherof it came to passe, that bothe  
 partes were wonderfullye enflamed,  
 and nothyng was lesse brattempted.  
 For Belisarius beinge a most expert  
 captaine in feats of armes, taught his  
 horsemen what they should do, shewing  
 them how farre they shuld go, & where  
 and when they should stay. One while  
 he sent out his horsemen sodainly at the  
 gates Salaria and Vinciana, and dis-  
 quietted the Gothes that encamped  
 theraboutes. Another while he would  
 yssue oute at Aurelius gate and be-  
 yng with the Gothes that lay between  
 Adrians tumber & the bridge Apollinus.

Belis. practi-  
 seth his Soul-  
 dyers in Skyr-  
 mishes.

In

## Goths in Italy. 42.

In these conflicts the souldiers of Belisarius beganne to preuaile. Not that they were able to match the whole power of theyr enemyes horsemen, but because they seemed to be so good for them being equally matched as many to as many, & somewhat more in number then they them selues were, and to be of more conning and audacitie in their feighting. His horsemen being thus by litle and litle practised, began to set lyght by the horsemen of theyr enemyes. And the besieged beganne to take courage and confidence vnto them. To be short, it came to that point, that they would not any more say, myghte, but feight it out in the playn field with hand strokes.

For the Captaynes and the Souldiers had lyen so long at Belisarius, and had so often and so earnestly entreated hym, that he determined to trye some greater encounter.

A battell betwene the Gothes and Belisarius.

And



## Of the warre of the

And thereupon he disposed his armye in this wyse. First he commaunded one band to issue out at the gate of Aurelius and to stand in battell raye before Adrianus tynbe against theyz enemies. The charge of this bande he committed to Valentine Lieutenant of the horsemen, geuing him besides his horsemen a certayne of the olde expert footemen, and of the people of Rome, which of their own fre wyll requested the thyng at his hand. He wold not haue these footemen stand with the horsemen, but willed them to take the hilles which rise ouer the playnes on the left hand of Janiculum. And he gaue Valentine commaundement to make a shewe as though he woulde euer geue an onset vppon the enemye, but in anye wyse not to encounter with them vntlesse he were compelled. For hys mynde was no moore but to deteyne that parte of the Gothes that encamped in that place, styll there, to the entent they shoulde not succour theyz

## Gothes in Italy. 43

they: felowes at the gate Salaria where he determined to feght. Then made he two other battels, one at the gate Salaria, and another at the gate Pinciana. And in them both he placed the horsemen in the forewarde, and the footemen in the rereward, commaundynge eche battell to issue out at they: seuerall gates and to marche toward they: enemies. Vitigis kynge of the Gothes hauyng intelligence by certayne runnagates that he shoulde haue battell the nexte morowe, caused the Gothes to arme them selues by the bzeake of the daye. In orderyng of hys battelles, he set hys footemen in the middes, and on eche syde of them hys horsemen, as it were in wynges. In thys order he proceded agaynst Belisarius and gaue hym battell. The Souldoyers on bothe sydes encountered together very spercely. And the Captaynes folowynge after them, Belisarius on the one syde and Vitigis on the other, encouraged

F.ij. they:

**O**f the warre of the  
their parties. At the beginning of the  
battell, the Souldiers of Belisarius  
were farre to strong for their enemies,  
and many of the Gothes were slaine.  
The battell was foughte harde by  
their campe, by meanes whereof the  
Gothes abounding in multitude, sent  
euer freshe and freshe in steed of them  
that were ouerthrowen. In this sorte  
the conflict lasted vntyll it was noone,  
neither partye gettinge aduantage  
of other. Howbeit the Souldiers of  
Belisarius foughte moze cherefullye.  
The Gothes helde it out onely with  
sufferaunce. In the meane tyme the  
battell that stood at the Sepulchre of  
Adrian, encountred with theyr ene-  
mies. For the people of Rome de-  
scendynge from the hylles gaue  
charge vppon the Gothes.  
And Valentine perceyvinge bys peo-  
ple entangled wyth theyr enemyes,  
marched forwarde wyth the Hoste  
whereof he was Captayne, from the  
tymbe of Adrian, and assayled bys  
enemies

## Gothes in Italy. 44

enemies also. By reason wherof the Gothes were not able to endure long against them, in especiall ye for as much as they were abashed at the great number that came downe from the hylls, so that beyng not able to recover agayne to theyr Campe, they were fayne to flye further of.

Nowe, the Romaynes that came from the hygher groundes fell by and by to ryfynge of theyr enemies Tentes.

By meanes wherof neyther they them selues pursued theyr enemies, nor yet the Souldyers, but suffered them to goe where they would. For the Souldyers perceyvinge them to fall to ryfynge, to the entente they would not lose theyr parte of the praye, lest the pursute of theyr enemies, and retourned to spoyle theyr Tentes also. And so the Gothes being let slip, when they

It is yll fish.  
sing before  
the nette.

F. lly. salve



Of the warre of the  
salwe that no body folowed after them.  
Stayed in the next mountaynes. From  
thence beholding theyr tentes to be  
pulled downe and carped away, when  
they perceyued howe theyr enemies  
kept neyther any order nor watchlike  
discipline, they encouraged one ano-  
ther and gaue a newe charge vppon  
them. At home (by reason they were  
laden and skattered in gatheringe of  
the spoyle) they easily ouercame, and  
so both saued theyr tentes and also re-  
couered theyr pray. By that tyme For-  
tune beganne to chaunge her copie a-  
bout the kinges campe also. For the  
Gothishe footemen resorting in great  
number out of the nexte campe, cast  
them selues vppon Belisarius horse-  
men, and keuering them selues wyth  
theyr shieldes in maner of a baulke,  
preased so foze vppon the forefront of  
theyr battell, that they compelled  
them to lose grounde. The whyche  
thyng when theyr horsemen that  
stode on the ryght wyng perceyued,  
they

## Gothes in Italy. 45

they also assailed Belisarius horse-  
men on the syde. Who beyng not  
able to abyde the brunte and force of  
them any long tyme, at length rety-  
red to the mayne battell of theyr foote-  
men, The which beyng not of strength  
sufficient to withstande the violence of  
the enemye, was with great slaugh-  
ter lykelowse put to flyght. Howe be it,  
there were two Deticaptaynes na-  
med Principius and Tarunt, whose  
manhode and audacitie was well ap-  
proued in that place to theyr great com-  
mendation and immortall fame. For  
at suche tyme as all the reste fled, they  
two keepng theyr standings, put them-  
selues against the whole power of the  
Gothes, and kepte them occupied, to  
thentent that theyr compaigne mighte  
haue space to recouer the citie, so long  
yntyll Principius beyng pitifullys  
mangled all hys body ouer, after long  
seyghtyng fell downe, and aboute hym  
two and fourtye of hys retinewe: and  
Tarunt being of lyke valiantnes

Belis. and hys  
men put to  
flyght.

The valiant-  
nes of Princi-  
pius and Tar-  
unt.

F.v. and

## Of the warre of the

and courage, when he had lost much blood at his woundes, and that his strength beganne to faile, was carried out of his battel to the Vincian gate by his brother whether he would or no, and there fell downe dead. After whose departure the Souldiers ranne full flyght toward the Citie.

The peryll of  
thē that were  
ouercome.

The Romaines standing vppon the walles dyd shut his gates against them, for feare least their enemies should haue entered in with them: by meanes whereof a great sorte of the souldiers were shutte out who getting ouer the Maunture, stood with their backs to the wales and their faces toward their enemies, hauyng no way to saue their lyues but one, which was to be defended by them that stood vppon the walles. For the most part of them hauyng eyther broken their wapons in the battell, or ellys thzowen them a way in the chace, had not wher with to defend them selues. Howbeit those that were vppon the battelmentes defended them

## Gothes in Italy. 46

them wyth stones. Thys battell being  
begonne at the Campe of the Gothes  
at the laste ended harde at the gates  
and walles of the Towne, There  
were slayne of Belisarius men a great  
number, and those of the valiantest  
and best practised.

### The.xiii.Chapter.

Of dyuers skyrmyshes duringe the  
continuaunce of the syege, the  
Gothes environ the Citie wyth  
another Campe wherevppon grow-  
wth scarcetye, and anone after en-  
seweth the plague. Belisarius  
by hys pollicye caused scarcetye  
in the Gothyshe campe likewyse,  
into the whiche the plague spre-  
deth it selfe also.

After



## Of the warre of the

The syndged  
child dreadeth  
tyer.

Skymiffhes  
aboute the  
bridge Milui-  
us.

**A**fter this battell Belisarius ab-  
steyned certayne dayes from fep-  
ghting, and was content to dea-  
fend the walles onely. At the length,  
when he had well hartened hys soule-  
diers, he beganne to lead them forth as  
gaine. But he durst not any moze en-  
counter with his whole power. Only  
he perseuered to make lighte skymis-  
shes as he had benn wont to do befoze.  
Of the which some were very notable  
specially suche as were agaynst those  
Gothes that encamped on the hyther  
syde of the bridge Miluius oueragaynst  
the gate of Aurelius. For in the same  
placc is a plaine grounde very fytt for  
horsemen to skymyshe in, and in the  
same playne standeth a theatre buyl-  
ded in olde tyme for maisters of fence  
to playe at weapons in. Aboute the  
same theatre were many whote skym-  
misshes. Because that eyther the soule-  
diers of Belisarius dyd take and vse  
it for a campe, or elles the Gothes pre-  
uentynge them layed ambushes in  
the

## Gothes in Italy. 47.

the same. Moreover, both at the gate  
Palatia, and the gate Vinciana, daye  
by daye was skirmishing, almost eue-  
rye daye. The Gothes therefore con-  
sidering holpe the siege was lyke to  
continue longe, thoughte there was  
no hope of wynnynge of the Citie anye  
other waye then by famin. For albeit  
that the taking awai of y<sup>e</sup> haven might  
seeme to haue bene a great anoyance:  
yet not withstanding (as mans witte  
is imaginative specially in extremitie)  
the hopes and such other shippes of bur-  
then as were wont to arrive at Port<sup>us</sup> Aduersitie mi-  
na, arrived at Antium, and there be-  
keth mea-  
loading their corne and other necessa-  
ries sent them from thence to Rome  
by land. The Gothes therefore desy-  
rous to cutte of this commoditie from  
the Romans also, pyched the eyght  
Campe aboute the Citie betwene the  
waye that leadeth into Latium, and  
the waye of Appius. For there are  
in the same place two conduytes, the  
whiche crosseing eche other doe stretch  
as

## Of the warre of the

as it were into two armes, and lea-  
uyng a certayne space betwixte them  
do mete a gayne a good waye of. They  
are from the Citie aboute fyue myles.  
The grounde betwene the sayde ar-  
mes the Gothes tooke and enclosed  
with a Wall of stone layed with lome.  
And so by that meanes they hadde a  
strong and well fortified campe, wher  
in they placed seven thousande horse-  
men, who infectyng bothe the vpper  
coast and the neather coast, stopped by  
the way into Latium, the waye of Ap-  
plis, and the waye to Ostia cuttyng  
of all libertie of conueying in of corne.  
Thzough this, they that were besie-  
ged stood in worse case then euer they  
dyd, and it was none other lyke but  
that Rome shoulde be famished, yet  
not wythstandynge as longe as there  
was corne in the fieldes, the souldy-  
ers woulde steale out of the towne in  
the night tyme, and fetch in corne, the  
which they soide very deere to the Cit-  
izens, and so relieved the necessitie for a  
whyle.

The great pe-  
ril that Rome  
stood in.

## Gothes in Italy. 48.

while. But when that this shift once  
 failed, the all things laye in utter de-  
 spaire. Nowe was the Sunne at the  
 highest and the dayes at the longest,  
 and the plague beganne to raigne in the  
 towne, so that towneiers dyed, not only of A plague.  
 the common people, but also of Beli-  
 sarius & soldiers. They were brought  
 to a great distresse, and to a for after  
 deede, and therefore the Romaines  
 resolyng to Belisarius, beleyed  
 theyr heauie misfortune. In that they A pitous com-  
playnt.  
 had brought theyr selues to such extre-  
 mie, by keeping theyr sayth and alle-  
 giance towarde the Emperour & by  
 pson, by promise. For theyr Citizens  
 had bene miserablie murdered at Ma-  
 nerma by their enemye, their citie dis-  
 nobly besieged by the Gothes, all thin-  
 ges without & walls waiked & spoiled,  
 within the walls oppressed with intol-  
 erable famine & penurie of all things.  
 Wherefore they besoughte hym to  
 leade them forth against theyr enemy;  
 so; it were better for them to dye like  
 men

- says in the modern form  
 the inconuenient le Boucher's Dict



A rough an-  
swere.

**O**f the warre of the  
men with their weapons in their hands  
then to pine away for hunger and to a-  
byde so great and so dishonorable cala-  
mities. When Belisarius heard them  
make their mone in this sorte, he gaue  
them scarce so gentle answer as the  
case required. He saide they were mis-  
sadvysed and ledde by rashnes ac-  
cording to the nature of common peo-  
ple, whyche are wonte to be ledde by  
rage rather then ruled by raso. They  
knewe well enough that he was wont  
to be alwayes ruled by Counsell and  
to doe his matters by discretion, and  
not by wylfullnes. He looked for an ar-  
mye of men from the Emperour, the  
whyche beyng ones come, yf they  
were then so willyng to fyghte as  
they made themselves to be, he might  
be able to warrant them victorie wyth-  
oute fayle. The sayd Arme did bring  
wyth theym an infinite deale of corne  
and therefore he wylled theym to de-  
parte and to lette theym alone wyth  
the order of the warres.

The

The Romaines with these words eyther recomforted or rather put in feare he beganne to imagin and deuise with himselfe, by what meanes he myghte bring scarcenesse of corne amonge the Gothes. For the performance wherof he practised this pollicie. He sent Constantine and Traiane with a thousand horsmen vnto Taracine, and Martine and Seuthis with syue hundred vnto Tibur; and he placed another bande at Alba. Vnto all these he gaue commaundement that to the vttermoste of their power they shuld stoppe all victuallers from the Gothish Campe, and helpe to saueconduct them that were willing to goe to Rome. And to the intent that the Campe which laye at the Conduyt should not anoy them, he caused a bulwarke to be fortified at the church of S. Paule, and appointed a troope of horsemen toward in the same place, to the intent to defend the wayes (as farre as they could) from thinnasions of y<sup>e</sup> Gothes. The church of S. Paule is wout to religion.

the wise practise and pollicie of Belisarius.

Reuerés had

## Of the warre of the

the gate toward Ostia, quite & cleane  
another way from the church of S. Peter,  
both of theym standyng wythout  
the towne and eche of theim hauinge a  
porch from the gate of the Citie to the  
Church. These two temples of the A-  
ppostles The Gothes in all the tyme of  
their siege did neuer violate. The  
prieestes contynuinge in them dyd their  
deuine service freely wythoute inter-  
ruption or trouble, as they had bene  
accustomed to doe in sozetymes. Con-  
stantine and Traiane therfore goyng  
to Taracine, when they had broughte  
Antonia the wyfe of Belisarius at  
Paples and there lefte her, retour-  
ned backe agayne and spoyled all the  
townes in those quarters, whych  
ministred releyse and succour to the  
Gothes, and wythin shorte space  
they broughte to passe, that nothing  
at al was conueyed to the Gothes out  
of those places. Martine and Senthis  
also goyng to Tibur when they had re-  
paired the walles of that towne which  
were

Antonia the  
wyfe of Beli-  
sarius.

## Gothes in Italy. 50.

were decayed, dyd dayly molest and  
disquiet the Gothes out of that place.  
By some meanes or other, & wold not  
suffer anye graine to be caried to theyr  
campe, The same thing did thei in like  
wise y<sup>e</sup> were sent to Alba. By meanes  
whereof win very short space, it came  
to passe y<sup>e</sup> the Gothes which were y<sup>e</sup> be  
syegers, were put to as much distresse  
as they that were besyged. And be-  
sides the scarcetie of corne, the pesti-  
lence also had spede it selfe into the  
campe of the Gothes.

Scarcetie and  
pestilence in  
the Gothische  
Campe.

### ¶ The. xiiii. Chapter.

¶ A new suppliment of souldiers commeth  
from the Emperour, for the saufe conuey  
whereof vnto Rome Belisarius pollitiquis-  
ly prouideth to the great slaughter of the  
Gothes, who thereupon enter in commu-  
nication of peace, so that a truce is taken  
whiles Ambassadours may go and come  
from the Emperour to whom the determi-  
natio of all their cōtrouersies is referred.

C.ij.

While



A newe sup-  
plement of  
souldiers.

## Of the warre of the

**W**Hile these things were in doing,  
Iustinia sent another hoste of me  
into Italy. They were of Thra-  
cian horsmen eight hundred, of whom  
John the sonne of his brother Vitalian  
had the leadinge: and a thousand and  
thre hundred mustered in other pla-  
ces, vnder the conduct of Alexander  
Marcent and Zeno. Moreover thre  
thousand footemen which came by wa-  
ter ledde by Paule and Conon. Also  
there were at Naples fyue hundred  
footenien prepared by Procopius of  
Cesarca. All these bandes assemblyng  
themselues together, determyned to  
goe to Rome, they brought with them  
great plenty and store of victuals. The  
horsmen marched by the sea coast, and  
the footemen were conueyed by wa-  
ter. In the same flete was broughte  
great abundaunce of corne, and much  
corne was also caried by land in wa-  
gons. Belisarius hauig knowledge of  
theyr commynge, for feare leasse the  
Gothes should meete wpyth them and  
inter-

A futtle pol-  
licye.

## **-Gothes in Italy** 51.

interrupt them, inuented this pollicie. He commaunded the gate of Flaminius (whych he had damned by from the begynnyng of the syege,) to be opened in the nyght tyme and the baggage taken away wherewythall it was stopped. The whych beyng done he sent certayne of hys souldyers thither the nexte mornynge by the breake of the daye ready harnessed and well appointed, byddyng them putte themselves in aray and so kepe them close wythoute noyse. When he sent Traiane and Diogenes wyth a thousand horsemen oute at the Vincian gate, commaundyng theym to runne to the campe of theyr enemies with as much noyse as they coulde; and when their enemies wers pssed out vpon them, to retyze backe agayne; and not to stape before they came to the Gate where they went forth. These thinges beyng in all poyntes thus accomplished, whyles they were sepyghtyng at the Vincian Gate, Belisarius

## Of the warre of the

sodainly issuyng out at the gate of Flaminus with the reste of hys armye, made straght to the campe of the Gothes, where he founde all thynges bnprouided and in maner emptye on that syde, as they that mistrusted no harme at all from the gate of Flaminus, because that it had bene longe closed vp. So that it wanted lytle but that he had wonne their Campe, Then turning hym selfe towarde the Pincian gate, & there gettyng his enemyes in the middes betwene his two hostes, he by assailling them on the backes, and those that were fledde, by retournyng fierly vppon them befoze, strake them with an incredible slaughter. And vppon thys Battell there fell suche a terrible feare amonge them, that they doubled theyr watche in their Campe, and tooke care for nothyng so much, as howe to defende themselves from the pollicies of Belisarius. The enemye begynne by this meanes

a great slaughter  
of the  
Gothes.

## Gothes in Italy 52.

meanes troubled and putte in feare,  
the Emperours armie without anye <sup>Communica</sup>  
let came vnto Ostia . The Gothes <sup>tion of peace</sup>  
therefoze beyng weyed and vered  
with many displeasures, and besydes  
that, vnderstandynge howe a freshe  
relue of Souldyers were come to the  
ayde of Belisarius, began to consulte  
of breaking by theyr siege. For by that  
tyme a great part of theyr campe was  
diminished eyther by the plague or elles  
by the sworde, and many had bene  
fayne to forsake the Campe, eyther for  
theyr woundes or elles for that they  
were sicke. Vitigis therefore sendyng  
Commissioners vnto Rome (after  
that many thynges had bene alledged,  
and aunswered on bothe sydes to and  
fro, as concernynge the equitie of  
theyr case,) at length agreed to re-  
ferre the determination of theyr con-  
trouersyes to the Emperour Iustini-  
an, and he to decide the matter as he  
should thinke good.

G.iii.

Here



## Of the warre of the

Truce taken Herebpon Ambassadors were sent  
for a tyme. . . to hym, and a truce taken for thre mo-  
nethes vntyll they myghte returne a-  
gaine, and for the better obseruynge  
of the truce, and performaunce of co-  
uenayntes, pledges were geuen and  
taken on both sydes. When thinges  
were thus set at staye, the army  
and victuals that were meete  
at Ostia, came to Rome  
bothe by lande and  
by water.

**T**hus endeth the fyrst  
Booke.

**The**

# The second booke <sup>53.</sup>

of Lenard Aretine , concer-  
nyng the warres in Italy  
against the Gothes.

## The first Chapter.

¶ There riseth occasion of grudge be-  
tweene the Gothes and the Imperials  
which groweth to altercation, so that  
in the end the truce is broken. Darius  
Bishop of Millaine enformeth Belisa-  
rius of the good wills of the Millai-  
ners towards the Emperour and is re-  
mised with great thanks. Belisarius is  
put in daunger of his lyfe by one of  
his Perleptaines, whom he would  
haue punished for his misbehauour  
the Gothes going about to steale the  
Citie and to winne it by treason are  
twise detected.



Vyles thynges stode  
thus at a staie, and that  
the warres ceased by  
reason of the truce that  
was take, (Belisarius  
yet neuertheles in the  
C. b. meane

Causes of 2<sup>d</sup>  
altercation.

Of the warre of the  
meane time keepinge Rome , and the  
Gothes their Campe and bastiles ) so  
daynly there fortun'd complaints and  
altercation for breakynge of the truce  
contrarie to promise, vpon thys occasi-  
on. There was (as I told you before)  
a garrison of Gothes at the Citie Poz-  
tua. Now the souldyers of the said gar-  
rison, when victualls fayled them, for-  
soke the towne. They were not so sone  
gonne out of it, but y<sup>e</sup> Danle Captaine  
of the Flatriens, remainyng with the  
navye at Ostia, entered into it. And  
wpythin a whyle after, the souldyers  
of Belisarius receyued another Cytie  
in Tuskye nere vnto the sea syde cal-  
led Centumcelles beyng lyke wyse  
lefte vpye by the Gothes. Whereafter  
the Gothes abandoned vpye the Ci-  
tye Alba amonge the marses after  
the same sorte, and the souldyers of  
Belisarius toke it. When Vitigis  
knewe that hys enemyes had taken  
those Cities, he sent commissioners  
to Rome, to complayne of violatynge  
the

## Gothes in Italy. 54.

the Truce contrarye to the articles of agreement, In that Portua, Centumcellas, and Alba townes of the Gothes, contrarye to all equitye and conscience, were taken from them for the Gothes had not geuen them tyme, but suche as were there in garrison were comme to hym at his commaundement, and should haue shortlye retourned into the same agayn that whych they did they thought they myghte the freelyer haue done it by reason of the Truce. And therefore of reason, restitution oughte to be made. Belisarius made aunswere to the commissioners in this wyse. Returne (q he) to the Kyng your Master, and tell hym that as for those thinges that he alledgeth as concernynge the callynge of his garrisons from theyr charges, to send them thither agayne, are but scyned matters. For it was easyc to be sene for what consideration the Gothes forsooke those Cyties.

he



## Of the warre of the

He confessed that it was not lawfull for him by the truce, to take them perforce or to steale the, but to enter vpon such as had no owners, nor anye bodie to keepe possession, that he sayd was not forbidden. Vppon this matter rose pryncelye grudge and hartburnyng, the Gothes sekynge meanes to requite Belisarius wyth the lyke. For those thre cities being taken, did Belisarius great pleasure and seruice for the warres. Winter drew on a pace. And Belisarius hauing men of warre good store, determined to send forth his hoysmen to winter in the country. Wherevppon besides those that went into other places. He sent M. into the Country of the Picents.ouer whō he made captaine John Vitalian geuinge him instructions what he would haue hym to do. There were in the same countrey the wiues and children of the Gothes, for the husbands & fathers were al come to the siege of Rome as many as were able to beare armour. If the truce continued

## Gothes in Italy. 55.

cōtinued, he bad he shuld not stirre, but  
 yf the Gothes should happen to worke  
 anye thyng contrarpe to the articles  
 of the Truce, then he wylled hym to  
 make hauocke and spoyle, and to take  
 as manpe towne as he could. If any  
 towne made resistens he commaun-  
 ded hym to besyege it, and not to  
 passe from it vntyll he had wonne it.  
 For he thoughte it shoulde not be for  
 hys ease to proceede onward, and leaue  
 the Townes of hys enemyes behynde  
 hym. Wyth these wordes and instruc-  
 tions Belisarius sent John amonge  
 the Picentes wyth an armpe. The  
 verpe same tyme Datius Bysshoppe  
 of Myllaine, and wyth hym certayne  
 of the heade Cityzens came to Belli-  
 sarius deelarpe vnto hym, that the  
 Cytye of Myllaine shoulde be at the  
 Emperours commaundement, yf he  
 woulde send neuer so slender a garr-  
 son thither. For they were of power  
 sufficient of theymselues to dys-  
 the Gothes not onely out of Myllaine,  
 but

Darius bis-  
 shoppe of  
 Millaine.

## Of the warre of the

but also oute of all Lumbardye , yf so  
be it that the Emperour woulde but  
onely beare the name of it . Belisa-  
rius entertaynyng theym curtesialy,  
and geuyng theym moste hartly than-  
kes wyth gentle and honorable wordes  
wylled theym to putte no doubt in  
the matter , affyrmyng that when  
tyme serued he woulde fullfyll theyr  
requestes . Durynge thys tyme that  
all thynges thus prospered and follo-  
wed theyr desyres , there happened  
an horrible daunger , the whyche in  
one moment had almoste tourned all  
thynges vppon syde downe . There  
was one Presidius a citizen of Rome  
who beyng wont to dwell at Rauenna  
in the begynnyng of thys warre  
stale awaye from thence , and came  
to Rome . In hys iourney the soul-  
diers of Constantyne whiche laye at  
Spolet, had taken from hym a sword  
curiousely wroughte and cosely ver-  
nyshed. The man beyng robbed and  
takynge

A sodayne  
daunger.

## Gothes in Italy. 56.

takyng the dyspleasure in yll parte,  
had made complaint thereof to Belisarius w<sup>th</sup> request to haue hys good  
restored again. And Belisarius had ge  
nen commaundement that it shoulde  
be so. But by meanes of the warre  
and of the syege whych afterwarde  
ensued, the souldyers beyng o  
therwys occupied and the Captayne  
busyd aboute weightier matters, the  
thyng was delayed. At the length  
in thys tyme ( as I sayde ) whyles  
all thynges were in ioyfull estate, as  
Belisarius rode through the towne.  
Presidius caughte hys horse by the  
brydle, and w<sup>th</sup> a lowd and com  
playnyng voyce, in the audyence  
of a greate number, asked hym yf  
it were meete that a Cytyzen of  
Rome ( who abandonyng all that  
euer he had to the enemy had fled a  
way naked ) shuld also be robbed by his  
souldiers of that little y he had carped  
away w<sup>th</sup> him, and be thus wrongfully  
and



## Of the warre of the

and iniuriously dealt withall. He sayd he had oftentimes putte vp hys complaynt vnto him of the wrong and violence that had bene offered, and coulde haue no redresse, and yet they that had robbed hym, had hys good wythin the Citty, and dyd weare it daylye before hys face. These wordes dyd styre the patience of Belisarius verye sore.

And therfore assoone as he came home he caused Constantine to be called before hym (for they were his souldiers that had taken awaye the sworde) and gaue hym a great rebuke for neglectyng of his commaundement so oftentimes in deliueringe of the sworde. Harry (or Constantine) I wyll rather thowle it into the Tyber, then I wyll restore it to that Harlet. This was verie lewdly and presumptuously answered. Then sayde Belisarius vnto him, art not thou vnder me? Yes sayd he, for as much as it is the Emperours pleasure. But yet for all that, in this one thyng I wyll neuer be ruled by you  
whiles

## Gothes in Italy. 57.

Whyles I lye. When Belisarius  
 had hym saye so, he was more angrie  
 with hym then befor; and called for  
 the Sericantes. Constantine kno-  
 wing that it should be to his colke that  
 the Sericantes were sent for; drew  
 out his Dagger that hung at his thigh  
 and lyke a Iudean cunning at Beli-  
 sarius, and dabbred hym in a lytle be-  
 neath the Rontacke. Out of doubt yf  
 such as stood by, had not speedely stept  
 vnto him, and wronge the Dagger out  
 of hys hande; and deliuered hym to  
 the officers; Belisarius had surely dy-  
 ed for it, and hys death had drawen all  
 things with it to vtter ruine, & the Go-  
 thes had the same day bene made lordes  
 of all. But God of hys infinite good-  
 nes would not suffer so great a mis-  
 chaunce to happen. And after at the  
 commaundement of Belisarius, Con-  
 stantine was put to death. Within a  
 whyle after, the Gothes attempted to  
 haue taken Rome by stealth, first by a  
 way that they founde out in one of the  
 channels

Treason twise  
 detected.

**O**f the warre of the  
channells of the conduites in the night  
tyme, and afterwarde by stealing ouer  
the ryuer in botes nere vnto the fiede  
of Mars. But they missed of their pur-  
pose in both places. For in the channel  
theyr olone lyghts bewrayed theyr co-  
uert working, by meanes whereof the  
channell was stopped, & they enclosed  
from getting out. And at the field of  
Mars their treason was detected, & so  
their attempt was made frustrat. The  
treason was deuiled in this wise. Two  
rascall Clarletts that dwelte by S. Pe-  
ters church (the Gothes as is shewed  
before, neuer offered harme or displea-  
sure to that place, but in honour of the  
posse preserved bothe the buyldynges  
therof and those that dwelled in them  
vnhurt) had secret conference w<sup>th</sup> thynge  
of betraying y<sup>e</sup> citie. And to bring theyr  
purpose to effect, they deuiled this po-  
licie. Beneath the fiede of Mars in one  
place, the walles were verie weake &  
soe decayed for lacke of looking to, by  
reaso (as I thinke) thei y<sup>e</sup> had ben before  
tymes

## Goths in Italy. 58.

tymes, trusted altogether to the defense  
of the Ryuer. Titigis therfore caused  
lyghters & barges and al. kind of botes  
to be put in a readynesse at the bydge  
Milutias. For had he once set any con-  
nient number of hys souldiers, ouer  
on thother side of the ryuer, he thought  
it would be an easie matter, after the  
landing of the first, to conuey ouer any  
mo and mo in the same vesselles. He  
douted nothing so muche as that the  
watchmen that warded on that side  
should escrie hym and be way his de-  
uise. For the auoyding of which dout,  
he corrupted the two Romaines for a  
piece of money, to further thys at-  
tempt. To whome he deliuered a sle-  
ping powder willing them to geue it  
the watchmen with wine, to the intent  
that when they had dronke the same,  
they might fall into a dead slepe. After  
these conueiances were thus deuised, &  
agreed vpon, the one of them being  
cryen with repentance, disclosed the  
whole matter to Belisarius, and  
there.



**O**f the warre of the  
 there vppon the other beyng taken  
 with the slepie medicine aboute hym,  
 that the kynge hadde geuen hym,  
 was put to the torture and compelled  
 to vtter all the order of the matter.  
 The whiche done, Belisarius caused  
 his nose and eares to be cut of, and  
 setting hym vppon an Asse, sent hym  
 out at the Pincian gate to the Gothish  
 Campe, to the entent that Vitigis  
 might perceiue how that his close wor-  
 kyng was detected, and his secret prac-  
 tises brought to lght.

The .ij. Chapter.

Vpon the discoverrie of the treason the  
 were reuoced from the Gothes, and among  
 gest other Arminine, vpon the takinge  
 wherof they breake vp their siege before

The truce bro-  
 ken betwene  
 the Gothes &  
 Belisarius.

**W**hen Belisarius had so openly di-  
 scouered these their craftie pac-  
 kages, he thought it not mete to  
 obserue the truce any longer to them.

Where-

## Gothes in Italy.

59

Wheruppon he wrote to John that he  
shoulde execute his commission. He  
with his two thousand horsemen scou-  
ring the countrey of y<sup>e</sup> Picents throughe,  
tooke the wyues and children of the  
Gothes prisoners, and foraged & spoy-  
led all the whole countrey from the one  
ende to the other. Moreover encounte-  
ryng with Aglicheus vncle of Alti-  
gis by the fathers syde, coming against  
him with an armie of the Gothes, he  
banquished him and slew the captaine  
himself w<sup>th</sup> a great part of his hoste, & so  
lyke a conqueror ranged ouer al<sup>l</sup> y<sup>e</sup> whole  
countrey. When he had wonne many  
townes & that he was about to bessege  
Aurusi, it was not vnknown vnto  
him what a slender garrison was with  
in the town, but yet the place was of it  
self very strong & defensible. And there-  
fore thinkyng it folly to spend the tyme  
in vayne aboute the besieging thereof,  
he kept on hys iourney forwards. The  
same opinion also had he of the besie-  
ging of Urbine. For the citie being  
H.ij. well

## Of the warre of the

wel fortified & strong of it self, seemed of  
necessitie to aske a long time in y<sup>e</sup> siege  
therof, & he had put al his hope in speedie  
celeritie. He tooke Fauuin & Bisantū,  
and then brought his army against A-  
rimine in hope to get it, because he had  
heard saye that the men of Arimine  
could not well agree w<sup>th</sup> the Gothes.  
When he had ones brought his hoste  
to this towne, he cast such a terrour vp  
pon the Gothes thereby, that thei durst  
not abyde thereabouts, but remoued  
vnto Rauenna, and the townefolke set  
open their gates to let him in. By this  
meanes John toke Arimine, leauing  
behinde two stronge cities manned by  
the Gothes, namely Auximum and  
Arbinc. All the which doinges were  
cleane contrarie to Belisarius com-  
maundements. Notobeyt he thought  
it better to be sure of Arimine, then to  
spende hys tyme vayne in lying still  
aboute Auximum and Arbinc.

Wherevnto he was the rather per-

suaded

## Gothes in Italy. 60

suaded, because that Arimine a towne  
 sonere neyghbour vnto Rauenna be-  
 ing taken, it was not lykelye that  
 the Gothes would tary any long tyme  
 after at the siege of Rome, but rather  
 make hast to come away to the defence  
 of Rauenna, and the places there-  
 aboutes. The which thing came so to  
 passe in dede. For as soone as the Go-  
 thes vnderstood that Arimine was ta-  
 ken, they determined to breake vp  
 their siege befoze Rome, and to depart  
 thence. Vitigis therefore within a few  
 dayes after set fier on his tentes, and  
 with all the whole power of the Go-  
 thes, dislodged. In his retyring he suf-  
 fered great losse. For when the one  
 halfe of his armye was passed the  
 brydge, Belisarius commaunded his  
 men to set vppon them that were be-  
 hynde, amonge whome he made  
 suche a slaughter, that a greate  
 number of theym that escaped  
 his handes, for haste in gettyng  
 ouer

The Gothes  
 break vp their  
 siege before  
 Rome.



Of the warre of the  
ouer the bridge were throlmen downe  
on both sides and drowned. This siege  
of the citie of Rome endured a whole  
yere and myne dayes, taking his be-  
ginning about the .xiiij. of .xv. daye of  
March. Nowe I will pursue the actes  
of eyther partes, and what provision  
was made on both sides after the break-  
ing vp of the siege.

The .iii. Chapter.

Vitigis besieginge Arimine is by the dili-  
gence and industrie of Iohn disapoynted  
of an assault that he determined to haue  
geuen to the towne, and repulset with  
great losse.

Vitigis albeist he made speede to-  
ward Rauenna, yet not withstan-  
ding he coueted to kepe the citie  
of Vetruria and of other Provinces in  
theyr accustomed obedience. And ther-  
fore he placed at Classium a thousande  
hoosemen, as manye at Urbinetus,  
foure hundred at Tuder, fourc thou-  
sand

## Gothes in Italy. 61

sande at Arrium, at Urbine, y. thou-  
 sande, fyue hundred at Cesena, and as  
 many at Mountferrat. And he hym-  
 selfe with the rest of his armie went to  
 besiege Arimine. Belisarius after the  
 departure of the Gothes, commaun-  
 ded Martine and Aldiger with a thou-  
 sande horsemen to make hast to Ari-  
 mine, & to bring John & his horsemen  
 that were with him from thence, pla-  
 cing footemen there in their steds. The  
 whiche thinge he did to the entent he  
 woulde not haue that bande (wherein  
 were the best horsemen of the hoste) be-  
 sieged by the enemye. For if so be it  
 that Arimine were manned with foot-  
 men, he thoughte that the Gothes  
 woulde not bestowe theyr labour in be-  
 sieging of it. And if they shoulde be-  
 siege it, he thought the footemen  
 shuld be better able to endure out the  
 siege then horsemen, for as muche as  
 it is a difficult matter to keepe horses  
 in a siege, and footemen might easily  
 be conueyed to Arimine at all tymes

Vitigis goeth  
 to besiege A-  
 rimine.

H.v.

by

## Of the warre of the

by water from Aucon, whiche newly  
before had yelded it selfe vnto him.

Herevpon Floiger and Martine for

27.   
solving no time, dyd sette a wynde-  
lasse farre from theyr enemies and

came vnto Arimine. For the Gothes

by reason of the huge multitude of  
their armye, were compelled to take

more leysure in their iourney, wheras

the other beyng light harnessed, out

went theym a greate waye. When

they were come to Arimine and had

declared the mynde and commaunde-

ment of Belisarius, John would ney-

ther obey hymselfe, nor yet suffer

hys cosyn Damian wyth hys horse-

men whyche were aboute foure hun-

dred, to be ruled by theym. And

therefore Floiger and Martine de-

partynge from Arimine, ledde a-

waye wyth theym all the horsemen

that Belisarius had deliuered vnto

John at hys settinge forth, lea-

uynge behynde theym none but the

footemen and those horsemen that

John

The wylful-  
nesse of Iohn  
Vitahan.

**Gothes in Italy.** 62

John and Damian had of their owne,  
Immediatlye herebpon Vitigis  
came and besyged the Towne. At  
hys fyrste commynge thither, he  
framed a towre of lyke heygth wpth  
the walles, the whyche was not dra-  
wcn wpth Dren as the other was be-  
fore at Rome, but dreyen by soul-  
diers that were wpthin the engyne.  
The Gothes therfore sette the same  
agaynst that parte of the wall, where  
they myghte wpth moste ease ap-  
proche, entendyng the nexte daye  
to haue wonne the Towne by as-  
saute. But John the same nyghte  
went oute wpth hys souldiers, and  
caused theym to cutte a broode and a  
deepe Dyche on that syde rastyng vpp  
all the earthe that came oute of it  
on that browe of the Dyche that was  
nexte the wall. And so one nyghtes  
worke disappoynted the longe pre-  
pensed labour of the enemye, cut-  
tyng of all possibilitie of bryngyng  
the engyne to the wall.

the diligence  
and industrie  
of Iohn in pre-  
uentyng the  
purpose of his  
enemies.

¶ Yet



## Of the warre of the

Act for all that Alitigis was mynded  
to fyll by the dyche, commaundyng all  
hys armye to prepare fagotts and  
strawe wyth suche other baggage for  
the same purpose. And to the entent  
the towne shoulde not the night follo-  
wyng be set on fyre by the enemye, he  
determined to drawe it backe agayne  
to the Campe. As the Gothes were  
about it, John issued out with hys  
souldyers, and set vppon them beyng  
busye about the worke. There was a  
great and cruell combate aboute the  
Turret, and manye of the Gothes  
were slayne. Howe be it, after longe  
feyghtyng they drew it backe agayne  
oute of daunger, but wyth suche a  
slaughter and so greate losse of theyr  
best men of warre, that they were  
utterlye in despayre of wynnynge the  
towne by force, determining to sub-  
due it by famine.

¶ The

The .iiiij. Chapter.

Belisarius sendeth Mundilas with a power to receiue Millaine, who in his waye at the Citye of Paue by a mischance loseth a noble man of hys companye called Fidelis. Millaine and certayne other Cityes of Lombardye yelde vnto Mundilas. Vtrais the Nephew of Vitigis goeth into Lombardye agaynst the Imperialles. Belisarius receyueith dyuers townes in Italye by composition. Vitigis sendeth a crewe of souldyers to Auxium for the more strengthenge thereof, the whych making a rode agaynst the inhabitants of Aucon, throughte the follye of Conon Captayne thereof make a greater slaughter and put the towne in danger of takynge.

The verye selfe same tyme, Belisarius graunted an ayde of souldyers to the Ambassadors of Millain that came besyde vnto Rome. He appointed Mundilas one of hys familiar friends a verye stout and balliant

## Of the warre of the

ballant man to be chieftaine of the said  
armie. In the same band was also Fi-  
delis of Millaine whome we declared  
to haue bene Steward of the kynges  
house. All these being conuoyed to  
Ceane by shippe, went from thence to  
Millaine on foote. And to the intent  
they woulde not be hyndered of theyr  
passage ouer the Rye, they carped Bots  
with them in Wagons, to ferrie ouer  
the ryuer withall. Marching therefore  
in this sort as I haue tolde, when they  
had passed ouer the ryuer the Rye, and  
were come to the Citie Tictum which  
is now called Daue, the Gothes  
issued out of the towne and set vppon  
them. For by reason that towne had  
a strong castle in it, the Gothes had be-  
stowed manie and precious thynges  
in the same, and had manred it with  
a great garrison. The skirmyshe was  
no sooner foughte, but that the Go-  
thes were dryuen into the Cytie.  
And so Mundilas passed with his  
armie ouer the brydge that was harde  
by

# Gothes in Italy. 64.

by the town. In the same place was Fi  
delis of Millaine. For he went into  
a certaine church to make his prayers,  
and the residue of hys company being  
all gone, last of all he came out alone, &  
as he wold have taken hys horseback,  
he overthrew. The which thing hys  
enemies that stood vppon the Wall  
perceuyng, rushed out vppon hym  
and slew hym, before that Mundilas  
and the souldyers wylte of it.

The death of  
Fidelis of Mil  
laine.

The death of this man was great  
sorrowe both to the Captaine and to  
the souldyers. For he was a noble  
man in hys countrey, and of much  
power, and such a one as wylth his pre  
sence might greatly haue furthered  
the warre that was in hand. Mundi  
las therefore and the reste of his com  
panye keepinge on theyr journey to  
warde Millaine, were receyued in  
to the Citie. Therevppon, Come,  
Bergoine, Pouaria, wylth the reste

Millaine and  
other cities of  
Lumbardy be  
come Imperial

of



**O**f the warre of the  
of the cities in those borders, following  
the example of Willaine, of their owne  
accoorde receyued Gundilas and his  
souldiers. When Vitiges had know-  
ledge of those things that had happe-  
ned aboute Willaine, he sent Vitaias  
his brotheres sonne with a great ar-  
my into those parts, to the intent he  
should bothe cause such to keepe theyr  
allegians to the Gothes as had not yet  
reuelted, and also (yf he could) reconce-  
r such as had already yelded.  
Furthermore, he wrote to Theu-  
deberte kynge of Fraunce (with  
whome not long before he had ente-  
red in leage) desyryng hym to minister  
ayde vnto Vitaias. In this state or ra-  
ther in this expectation were the mat-  
ters of Lombardie. Belisarius at such  
tyme as coms began to warte nye, set-  
ting out of Rome, marched wth his  
armye towarde his enemyes. The  
Gothes that were left in garrison at  
Tudert and Cluse, hearing that Be-  
lisarius was making towarde theym  
for

## Gothes in Italy. 65.

foras muche as they thought them-  
selues ouer weake to encounter a,  
gagynste hym, sothe wyth sent mes-  
sengers vnto hym and yelded by theyr  
Townes by composition. Whyle  
these thynges were in doinge, Al-  
tigris sent another armie vnto Auri-  
mum. For he was utterlye deter-  
mynd to receyue and keepe still that  
Citee. Wyth this armie he sent a  
newe deputye to haue the charge of  
the Towne and the men of warre,  
named Macinius. Who adioining his  
newe souldyers and the olde crewe to-  
gyther, purposed to attempt the win-  
nyng of Aucon hys nexte neyghbour  
citie, whiche was manned wyth a gar-  
ryson of Belisarius. And therevpon  
he went wyth all his whole power  
agaynste the inhabitants of Aucon.

That Towne in those dayes was  
walled onelye on that syde, that  
stode vpon the hill, the lower  
places situated on the playne groundes

## Of the warre of the

albeit they were replenished with build-  
ings, yet were they not enclosed with  
any wall, Therefore at such time as  
the Gothes approached, Conon captain  
of the towne and souldyers of Aucon,  
fearing least the suburbs and the in-  
habiters thereof should be wasted and  
destroyed by thenemye, came downe  
from the vpper part of the towne with  
all his whole crewe, and set hymselfe  
agaynste hys enemye. But in that  
case Conon was to farre ouermatched.  
For he hauynge scarce a thousand sould-  
diers, encountered with his enemies  
beynge foure thousand. And there-  
fore he dyd quickly abyge hys foolyshe  
hardynesse. For beynge not able to  
stand agaynste so manye, he was at  
length vanquished, and beynge put  
to flyght losse the moste parts of hys  
men, and the Citie it selfe was with  
much a doo hardly saued from taking.  
For when the souldiers retzyed full  
flyght toward the towne, the townes-  
men so; doubtleaste their enemyes  
should

The foole har-  
dinesse of  
Conon.

## Gothes in Italy. 66.

Should enter in amonge the souldyers,  
fearefully closed vpppe their gates. By  
meanes whercof there was a greate  
slaughter made of theym euen harde  
vnder the wall. And the Captayne  
Conon himselfe was dxiuen to so nar-  
rowe an erigent, that he had none  
other waye to saue hys lyfe, but to be  
draiuen vpppe the wall by a lynce. The  
Gothes reerynge vpppe skalynge Lad-  
ders, endeuored to wyne the  
Cytie. Other some settynge fyre on  
the houses that we spake of before,  
burnte vpppe all that was wythoute  
the walles.

### ¶ The.v. Chapter.

¶ Narfes an Eunuche the Emperours Cham-  
berlaine commeth into Italy with a new  
power and meeteth with Belisarius about  
Aucon, where in consultinge what is to  
be done after diuers opinions of thother  
captaynes Narfes perswaderh to goe and  
rescow Iohn Vatalian besieged in arimine  
the whych Belisarius verye polittiquelye  
bringeth to passe. Through flatterie and



## Of the warre of the

euill insugation ryseth emulation and discord betwene Narses and Belisarius. Belisarius going with Narses to the siege of Urbine is of him forsake and yet through good fortune winneth the towne.

The cominge  
of Narses in-  
to Italy.

**N**O longe after that these thinges were done at Aucon, Narses came into Italye wyth a newe hoste of men. Thys Narses was an Eunuque, a man that stode muche in the Emperours fauour, and one that bare greate rule and auctoritie aboute hym, for no man myghte commaund in the Emperours court, but he onelye. Moreover he was threasurer of the Empyre (whiche is the offyce of greattest honour and truste) and one of hys priue counsell, by whome the Emperour was in manner altogether ruled. He broughte wyth hym into Italye fyue thousande souldyers. The notablest amonge whome, was Justine, Captayne of the Illirien souldyers, & another, Narses a Persian bozne

## Gothes in Italy 67

boync. Also there were in his retincto  
 of Therules of whom were cap-  
 taines Flaud;e and Phauothcus. In y  
 meane tyme Belisarius hearynge in  
 what daunger the men of Aucion stood  
 was come among the Bicents: and so  
 was Narces in likwise. The captayns  
 and their armies met both together a-  
 bout the towne. Where as they were  
 consultinge concernynge the warre  
 that they had in hand, and were deu-  
 singe what was moſte requiſite to be  
 done next of all out of hand, there ap-  
 peared many doubtēs and daungers  
 in the matter. For yf they ſhould go  
 and beſeige Ariminum, John & thoſe  
 that were beſeged wpth hym in Ari-  
 mine ſhould be left in apparant ieoper-  
 die, in eſpecially conſydering that foode  
 fayled them. Againe yf they ſhould go  
 to Arimine, they ſhoulde leaue be-  
 hynd them at Ariminum a great gar-  
 riſon of the Gothes, to the preiudice  
 of theyr armye and damage of the  
 countrey.

The meeting  
 of Belisarius  
 and Narces.

J.iii.

In

## Of the warre of the

Opinions of  
tho officers a-  
gainst Iohn.

A friend is tri-  
ed at neede.

Thoration of  
Narces.

In geuing of their verdittes manye of  
theym that were chiefe officers of the  
campe spake much against the rashe-  
nesse of Iohn, in that he had shutte by  
hymselfe in Arimine contrarie to the  
commaundement of Belisarius, and  
that of a proud and couetous stomacke,  
he had runne bypon hys owne heade,  
without regard of hys Captayne or of  
hys charge. When Narces perceyued  
that, fearing least by y meanes Iohn  
should be abandoned whom he loued  
most entierly, he spake hys mynde to  
thys effect. My Maisters (q he) when  
men consult as concernynge the pub-  
lyke vtilitie, in my opinion they ought  
to haue an especiall eye thereto, for it  
owne selfe, and not to hynder it eyther  
for malice or for loue. Certainly all o-  
ther thynges set a syde, when I waye  
with myselfe the thing wherof we doe  
cōsult, we thinke I spie this difference  
in the matter. If we delay the siege of  
Ariminū, there is no let but that with  
in fewe dayes after we maye attempt  
the

the same when we lyfte . But yf we  
make anye taryance in rescowynge the  
souldiers that are at Arimine, we can-  
not afterwarde helpe theym when we  
would. For ere many dayes to an end  
hunger wyll so pinch theym, that they  
shalbe compelled to yelde themselves  
to their enemies. And therefore what  
indifferent Judge doubteth, but that  
moost speede oughte to be made thither  
where taryance procureth unrecovera-  
ble daunger. But John (ye will saye)  
deserueth not to be succoured because  
he despised his captaynes commande-  
ment, and through his owne wilful-  
nesse cast himselfe into that daunger.  
Admitte that all these things are true  
y are reported of John. What then  
shall we for the hatred we beare to  
John, willfully suffer the destruction  
of so noble and worthy a Citie as Ari-  
mine is, and of the innocent souldiers  
besieged in the same? I beseech the  
noble and puissant Captaine Belisa-  
rius, yf John hath offended thee, wylt  
thou



## Of the warre of the

thou breake his trespass upon the empe-  
roure: who therby should lose both hys  
towne and his souldiers, to the greate  
preiudice of the publike weale: againe  
what shall men thinke, or what shall  
men say of vs and our armie if we sit  
ting still like a sort of cowards and be-  
holding it with open eyes, shall suffer  
our companions in armes to perishe,  
and our besyeged Citie to be taken by  
the enemye, in manner harde vnder  
oure noses? My opinion is therefore  
that wythoute anye further protrae-  
ting of tyme, we lead our armyes to  
Arimine, to succour our men that are  
in danger. And after ward (yf it shall  
seme expedient) to beslege \* Aurimū &  
other of our enemies holdes. No further  
thopinion of Purses w<sup>al</sup>, y<sup>e</sup> very same  
tyme came letters fro John unto Be-  
larius, aduertising him y<sup>e</sup> the souldi-  
ers constrained by famine, had fallen to  
composition w<sup>th</sup> their enemies, to yelde  
w<sup>in</sup> seven daies, onles they were res-  
cued in the meane while. Whereupon,  
the opini-

Now called  
Orimo.

## Gothes in Italy. 69.

the opinion of Parles was confirmed by the assent of all the whole counsel. When it was ones fullye condiscened that succour shoulde be ministered vnto John w<sup>th</sup> all speede possible, Belisarius prouided for the same in thys wise. First he commaunded Aratus to abyde in the same place where they then were, with a thousand horsemen willynge hym in anye wyse not to remoue from thence, nor by any means to attempte fortune for anye occasion, but onelye to defende his campe yf the enemye aduentured vpon hym. After that, he furnished his shippes and embarked his souldyers, commyttynge the charge of them to Herodian and Aliarius. But the rule of the whole flete he wold shuld be at the discretion of Idiger, commaunding him forthw<sup>th</sup> to direct his course toward Arimine. Another part of his army he betoke to Martine, bidding him coast the shippes and kepe w<sup>th</sup> them as nere as he could by the shore.

The pollicie  
que prouidis  
of belisarius  
for the ref-  
cowinge of  
Arimine.

J. b.

And

## Of the warre of the

And asone as they approached their enemies so that thei came win kenning then of set purpose to kindle manye fires in their Campe, to the entent to make the enemy beleue y they were a greater army then they were in dede. Whiles these kept by the sea coast, he himselfe went a contrary waye by the City Saluia. The same was somtime a saire citie but it had bene destroyed and beaten downe to the grounde by the Gothes that came sytse into Italye vnder Alaricus, so that nothyng remained therof moze then the ruines. Belisarius therfore passinge by thys towne, marched by the mountaynes eschewynge the playner waye that leadeth to Arimine, by the feldes of the Fauenses and Misauriens. For seynge that hys enemyes had a farre greater armye aboute Arimine then he had, and that he had lefte a stronge garryson of theym behynde at Aurimum, he thoughte it moze for hys behoofe to vse wysedome and policie

Saluia.

## Gothes in Italy. 70.

pollicie agaynst the Gothes, then to  
seight wyth theym in open feld. Har-  
shing therfore the waye before men-  
tioned, when he came vnto the hilles  
that ryle agaynst Ariminc, (as muste  
nedes be lightly in so great an armye)  
he founde certaine of his enemies ran-  
ging abroad. The which beyng either  
slayne or elles taken prissoners, some  
of them with their faces sore mangled  
he let goe agayne. Who returninge  
to the Campe of the Gothes, brought  
tidynges that Belisarius was at hand  
wyth his whole power, for the confir-  
mation whereof they shewed their fa-  
ces newlye wounded. It was aboute  
noone when this newes was brought  
to the campe. And therupon proclama-  
cion was made to harnesse, & that eue-  
ry man shoulde fall in order of battell  
vnder his antesygne. The Captaines  
haupng putte their men in aray, wai-  
ted for the commynge of Belisarius,  
lookyng continually toward the moun-  
taines from whence he was repoynted  
to



## Of the warre of the

to come. But Belisarius had aboute  
middyday encamped himselfe in the most  
taynes, a good way of from Ariminie,  
and came not downe to hys enemyes  
that day. By meanes whereof the Go-  
thes hauyng stood gapyng for them all  
day to no purpose, at length about the  
Sunne setting brake their aray and re-  
toured into their tentes. Howbeit,  
when night came, clypyng a great sorte  
of fiers on the sea coast, cleane contra-  
ry to that way that Belisarius was re-  
ported to come, (they were the fiers  
that Partyne and hys armye made)  
they were in great feare all that night,  
in so muche that there was not anye of  
them that eyther tooke any slepe or put  
of hys harnesse. As soone as it was  
dawe, when they beheld the nauie also  
ready decked and furnysht makinge  
sayle toward Arimine, for feare least  
they shoulde be entrapped by two  
hostes at ones, the one from the lande,  
the other from the water, they by and  
by brake vp theyr siege, and without  
any

The Gotes  
broke vp  
their siege be-  
fore Arimine.

## Gothes in Italy. 71.

any order fled to Rauenna. First of all arrived Aldiger with his fleet at Arimine, and going on land spoiled the tentes of the Gothes. Anone after came Martine and Belisarius with their armies. When Belisarius beheld John and his souldyers that had bene besieged, how pale and leane they looked with hunger, turning himselfe to John as it were to taunte him for his rashnesse, he saide: ye are much beholdynge to Aldiger, and worthy to thanke him for his paines. John answered proude and arrogantlye agayne, that there was no cause why he should thanke Aldiger or any man elles save onely Parthes. As who should saye, he desired to haue it knowen, that Belisarius would small haue regarded his deliuerance, yf Parthes had not compelled hym. These wordes troubled Belisarius, and they were the beginninge of discorde.

Occasion of  
discord among  
thimperialles.

For

## Of the warre of the

See what mischiefe  
chiefe flattery  
worketh.

For after that tyme, John standyng  
in feare of Belisarius, cleaved vnto  
Parles. The residue also of his frends  
flyred by Parles with euill counsell  
against hym. Mouching that it was  
not for his honour being Threasurour  
of Thempyre, and one of the Empe-  
rours priuie counsell, to be led by thad  
uise of Belisarius, specially seying that  
he him selfe, had an armye farre pas-  
syng tharumpe of Belisarius, both in  
number and strength of souldyers, and  
also in pollicie of Captaines, and ther-  
fore he ought to seeke the gloze of the  
recovery of Italy from the Gothes, to  
hym selfe and not to Belisarius. These  
flatterynge persuations set Parles in  
such a pryde, that he euer after en-  
camped by him selfe, and would not fo-  
low Belisarius aduise in nothyng.  
But consulted by hym selfe as tou-  
chyng these warres and all other af-  
fayres that were in hande. Neuerthe-  
lesse they went bothe together to the  
siege of Urbine, but yet not in one  
campe

## Gothes in Italy. 72.

campe. For Belisarius laye on the east syde of the towne and Parles on the West. At suche tyme as Belisarius was purposed to haue assaulted the towne, and had prepared engines for the same, Parles laughyng hym to skorne for his labour, within a daye or twayne after he came thither brake vp his siege and retourned with hys armye to Arimine, leauyng Belisarius & his company in worse case, then yf he had not come there at all. For the enemye perceiuinge parte of the armye to dislodge, beganne to take a stout courage, finally regarding that part that remained still behynd. Nevertheless Belisarius beganne to reere vppе ordinaunce to ward that gate of the towne where the ground was most leuell, & to geue the aduenture to wyne it by assault. Whiles he was putting these things in a readynesse by a meruelous good fortune it happened that the souldaine (the townesmen of Urbine hauing no mo but that one onely) dyed  
up

The good fortune of Belisarius.



**O**f the warre of the  
bp of the owne accord. Wherthrough  
it came to passe that the town for feare  
was yelded, vpon condition that the  
Gothes and the Citizens of Arbine  
should become subiectes to the Empe-  
rour Iustinian, in as free and ample  
manner as other Italians that were  
Imperiall.

The, vi. Chapter.

**O**f the great dearth that was throughe  
all Italy, and how the Gothes besege Mil-  
laine and winne it through the discord of  
Belisarius and Narses. Whereof the Empe-  
rour beyng aduertised by Belisarius cal-  
leth Narses out of Italy. Wherevpon Beli-  
sarius hauing absolute auctoritie agayne  
procedeth wyth the warres, and besegeth  
Auximum, the sytuation and strengthe  
whereof is here declared.

**W**hen Arbine was thus ylded vnto  
hym for as much as it seemed  
not as yet expedient to attempte  
the Siege of Auximum, Belisarius  
led his hoste against the Arbruetanes  
The

## Gothes in Italy. 73.

The winning of that towne was some what difficult, because it stood vppon a rocke so stepe on all sydes, that men coulde not well come to assault it.

The onely hope was to wyne it by famin. For Italy was as it were so woyn to the hard bones with continuall warre, and troden vnderfoote with many armyes, that there was not one citie in all the countrey, but it suffered scarcitie and penurie: the which penurie *Arbeuetus* also being at length oppressed; came in subiection to *Belisarius*. *Parles* lyinge at *Arimine* sent *John* with an armie of men to wyne *Cesena*. At the which towne, as he was scalping of the walles, he was repulled with manye woundes, and lost a great sort of hys company. In the same assaulte was slayne *Phaurothens* captayne of the *Crules*. Wherevppon *John* desisting from *Cesena*, went to *Forum Corneti*, the which was yielded vnto hym by composition. The same tyme *Mundilas* and those that

A.j. were

Great darth  
through out  
all Italy.

Millane besieged by the  
Gothes.

**O**f the warre of the  
were to him at Millaine, began to be  
wrapped in great distress. For Teude-  
bert the French kyng (as is before spe-  
cified) being by Vitigis called vpon for  
ayde by vertue of the leage that was  
betwene them, had sent to Araias ten  
thousand Burgonians vpon confidence  
of the which multitude he encamped  
himself not far from Millain, suffering  
neither come nor any other kinde of su-  
stenance to be conueyed thither. Dun-  
dilas had of necessitie bene driuen be-  
fore to disperse his soldiers into Come,  
Bergome, & Pouaria, so that he had  
no great number of horsemen aboute  
hym. Holwe be it the hardest of the mat-  
ter was not the defence of the citie,  
for the Citizens of Millain wyth one  
acco: knitte themselues togyther in  
the defence thereof. But the feare  
was leaste victualle shoulde faile in so  
populous a Cytie, yf so be it the bar-  
barous Gothes shoulde be suffered to  
continue longe in those borders. Belli-  
sarius therefore hauynge intelligence  
therof

**Gothes in Italy.** 74.

thereof, sent Martine & Aliarius thither with a great power, to the intent that Mundilas & they ioyning together, might remoue the Gothes further of. When they came at the ryuer Po, which is frō Millain but one days iourney, they durst not passe ouer for feare of their enemies, but lnygered many dayes in the same place, frustrating day by day the hope of Mundilas & them that were besieged w<sup>th</sup> him. For where as they made promise to haue passed the riuer & come vnto Millaine; thei performed no part thereof. Dayly both hope & sustenance failed those that were besieged. At y<sup>e</sup> last after long lnygering Martine & Aliarius confessing the truth aduertised Belisarius y<sup>e</sup> they alone were not able to passe ouer y<sup>e</sup> riuer against so great a power of their enemies, onles they woulde wylfully runne in open danger of their liues. Wherefoze if he thought it good, he shuld cause John & Iustine which wer w<sup>th</sup> they<sup>r</sup> armies not farre frō Bononie

B. y. to



**O**f the warre of the  
to ioyne w<sup>th</sup> them. Belisarius hereupon  
immediatly w<sup>rote</sup> vnto John & Iustine  
commaundinge them to ioyne w<sup>th</sup>  
Partyne , and to make all the speede  
they coulde to relieue they<sup>r</sup> fellowes  
beinge besieged and in vtter peryll of  
their lyues . They sent hym worde  
again that they woulde nothing do  
without the cōmaūdement of Parses.  
Thereupon Belisarius w<sup>rote</sup> again  
vnto Parses. Who albeit he gaue his  
consent that the armye shoulde go th<sup>er</sup>,  
yet not withstanding, so<sup>r</sup> as much  
as it was a thing done by Belisarius,  
he went about it verie slowly and ne-  
gligently as men are wont to do in o-  
ther mens busineses . By this mea-  
nes the matter was so longe delayed,  
that at last they were vtterly deceyued.  
In the meane tyme Villaine was eue-  
ry daye so<sup>r</sup>er afflicted then other, intol-  
erable hungre welmye pyned them  
away , and the citie wauiug betwene  
hope & feare, abode such miseries & an-  
guish as almost no men were able to a-  
bide

## Gothes in Italy. 75

bide again. At þ length being brought to utter extremitie Mútilas & his soul-  
 diers fell to cōposition to abandon by the towne so they might escape with theyꝝ lyues. After whose departure the  
 Gothes enter yng into the citie, spared neither yong nor old. For they slew in euery place not only such as were able to beare armour, but also thold men & yong boyes. The women were geuen in seruitude to the Burgonions, & the  
 citie rased to the ground. Reparatus a citizen of Rome beyng taken in the towne by the Gothes, was helwen in smale gobbetts & throwen to dogges. Thus was one of the goodlyest & most populous cities of all Italy (through the discord of Narses & Belisarius) put to utter destructiō. In this ruine & overthrow of þ citie, were slain of þ Millai-  
 ners about. ccc. M. When Belisarius had tidings of it, he took great sorow for the same, & wrote vnto thenperour Justinian, the beginning and proceeding of all the whole matter.

Millane is lost through the discorde of Narses and Belisarius.

A notable cūctie.

Wm. Godd.

B. 14.

Justi.

## Of the warre of the

Narſes is cal-  
led out of  
Italy.

Juſtinian being certified of the truth,  
was much offended thereat, but yet pu-  
niſhed not any man for it. Only he cal-  
led home Narſes out of Italy, comit-  
ting the whole charge & authoritie of  
the warre vnto Belisarius. Whereupon  
Narſes w<sup>th</sup> part of his armie retourned  
into Grece, & Belisarius with all the  
reſt abode ſtill in Italy. Who now ha-  
ving no man to ouerthwart him in his  
determinations concerning the warre.  
Although that his chief care reſted vpon  
Vitigis & Rauenna, yet he minded  
to take two townes moe from the Go-  
thes, before he proceeded with his ar-  
mie againſt Vitigis & Rauenna. The  
townes that he deſired were Auximum  
and Feſules: both of them very ſtrong-  
ly ſituate, & both of them thoroughly  
manned by the Gothiſhe garrisons.  
For neyther woulde he leaue at his  
backe Auximum hauing in it thre thou-  
ſand of choſen ſouldiers, whiche w<sup>re</sup>  
able to do muche diſpleaſure & hinder-  
rance to his adherents: no, yet Feſules  
becauſe

## Gothes in Italy. 76

because that as long as þe Gothes held that citie, he thought nothing shuld be in rest thzough Petruria. Hereupon he deuised his army into thze parts, of the which he toke one with him to besiege Auritum, another he sent by Justine & Cyprian against Fesules, & the third he beroke to Martine & John Italian, commaunding them to encampe aboute the river Po, & to deteyne Alaias with his hoste as long as they could in those borders, to the intent thei shoulde not come to raise any of the siges among þe Thuskans & Picents. And if thei were not able to kepe him still there, then to follow him in the talle. Martine & John therfore setting forth into Lombardy to that part of the armye that we spake of before, wanne the citie Dertone situate by the river Po, and from thence did their endeuour to trouble Alaias & þe Gothes. Cyprian & Justin w another armye going vnto Fesules, albeit the besieging of that citie were very difficult for þe nature & roughnes of the place,

L.iiij.

yet



## Of the warre of the

pet not withstanding they brought  
theyr campe as nere as they could, & be  
sieged it from a higher ground, where  
the way lay more plaine to the towne.  
Belisarius himself with the puyssant  
test company of all, beset Aurinum.  
Vitigis had placed in Aurinum the  
best that he could pyke out among the  
Gothes, & was very circumspect in for  
tifying of that towne. Coniecturing  
that which was most true, namely that  
Belisarius would neuer procede to the  
besieging of Ravenna, unless he had  
first subdued Aurinum. When Beli  
sarius had well viewed the situation &  
nature of the place, he was past all  
hope of winning Aurinum by force.  
For the citie standeth vpon somewhat  
a high grounde, & besides that there  
were within to defende it, a puyssant  
band of chosen men of warre, able to  
geue battell euen in thopen field. So  
he had none other hope, but only to  
take them by famine, for as much as  
there was a great number enclosed w  
in

Belis. besie-  
geth Auximū.

## Gothes in Italy. 77

in the citie. And therefore Belisarius  
omitting assault, pitched his campe  
round about the hill on euery side, nar-  
rowly watching that nothing shoulde  
be conueyed in to them. But lyke as  
that large compasse of his campe was  
good to prohibit the portage of things  
in, so was it vnprofitable against so-  
daine inuasions of the enemye. For they  
that were win, might at their pleasure  
make sodaine assaults vpon what part  
of the Campe they lysted out of the  
towne aboue. And the souldyes of Be-  
lisarius lay so farre one from another,  
that they coulde not readily helpe at  
need. By this meanes it came to passe  
that the enemye continually infested  
the campe, and diuers skirmishes  
were therevpon fought. Moreouer,  
there was a certain moyst ground not  
farre from the citie, where there grew  
much grasse. This field was as it  
were the place of theyr dayly exercises,  
when eyther the besiegers or the be-  
sieged resorted thither for forage: and  
sometyme

## Of the warre of the

sometyme theyr courages were so kyndeled on bothe sydes, that almoste all the whole Campe ranne thither to feyght. In these encounters the Souldoyers of Belisarius preyed in multitude, and the Gothes by the situation of the place, bothe partes beyng equal in manhod and prowess. The lyke conflicts were also at Fesules, for there were manye sodayne alarmes geuen, and welnye daylye skymysches betwene the besiegers and the besieged.

The besiegers had none other hope of attaynyng thei desyre, then by keepinge the besieged from sustenance, and famyshinge them for want of foode. For there was no hope to wyne so stronge Citices as those were by force. And therefore by takynge vp standynges in places conuenient about the towne, they cutte of all carryages and conueyances of thynges in.

**The**

¶ Of townes that were besieged by the Imperiales, how the French men comming into Italy after that they had put two armies to flight the one of the Gothes the other of the Imperials bothe in one day, returned home agayne, and how Felules was yelded to the Imperiales.

**W**hyle the warre was in this state  
and that Ariminum among the  
Picentes, & Fesules among the  
Etrurians were narrowly besieged,  
there happened a straunge chaunce a-  
bout the riuer Po. For the frenchmen  
with their Captaine Theudebert, ha-  
uing passed ouer the Alpes, came in  
great number into Lumbardye. The  
cause of their comming (as after ward  
was knowen) was thys. Because that  
when they perceyued how warre was  
made in Lumbardye, they being a war-  
like people & in maner sauage, were of-  
fended that suche a countrey being  
they,

the cause of  
the sodaine  
comming of  
the frenchme  
into Italy.



## Of the warre of the

their next neighbour, should fall as a reward to them y<sup>e</sup> could get the upper hand, and that thei themselves sytting still lyke cowards the meane whyle, should accepte such to be their neyghbours, whom the fortune of victorie appoynted to them. This was the occasion why they passed the Alpes. The same tyme Araias beyng often writte to by Vitigis, had passed the Rhyer Po and was marchinge wyth hys armye toward Rauenna. Martin and John likewise newlye sent thither by Belisarius, preventinge Araias, had encamped themselves not farre from the same place, to the entent (if they could) to haue stopped hym of hys passage. Their campe was distant fro the campe of Araias about .vij. myles. In the meane season, the Frenchmen suddenly came into those quarters. Araias & the Gothes by reason of the league that was lately taken betwixte them, supposed they had come to their ayde, lyke as they had doone before in the warres

## Gothes in Italy. 79.

warres about Millaine. These french men y<sup>e</sup> passed ouer the Alpes at that time w<sup>th</sup> Theudebert, were to the number of foure scoze thousand, wherof be ry fewe were horsemen & those attended alwaies vpon the kings person, all the residue being ffootemen. Their armour was not in pikes no<sup>r</sup> in bowes, but to keuer their bodies w<sup>th</sup>, they bare a tergat & a skull, and to strike the enemye w<sup>th</sup>all, a sword & a byll. In the battell they vsed mosse commonlye their billes, the which strake w<sup>th</sup> such force, y<sup>e</sup> neither head pece no<sup>r</sup> tergat was able to hold out the blow, but that they cut through, no<sup>r</sup> any man was of power able to w<sup>th</sup>stand the violence of y<sup>e</sup> stripe. These therfore as frendes of the Gothes, being suffred to passe ouer the ryuer Ticinus at the brydge by Pavia, did afterward much hurt & displeasure to thynhabiters of Pavia, & of a sauage cruelty slew the wiues and children of the Gothes as they found them abrod in the country, anon after passing ouer  
Po,

the Gothes  
and the impe-  
rials tourned  
both out of  
their campes  
by the french  
men,

## Of the warre of the

So, when they approched nere Aradas  
campe, whether it were of set purpose,  
or through rashenes, they fell a quare-  
ling & consequently a feighting w<sup>th</sup> the  
Gothes. The end of the fray was, that  
the Gothes being put to the worse so-  
fok their campe, & flying not far from  
the campe of our men, caused the soul-  
diers of Belisari<sup>9</sup> to wonder soze what  
thei shuld meane. For thei had hard no-  
thing of the conning of the French-  
men, & therefore thei thought verely y<sup>t</sup>  
Belisarius had bene come by some pri-  
uie & vnknown way, to destroy Arad-  
as. Herevppon arming themselves in  
hast, when they had gone a litle soze-  
ward, sodeinly they met w<sup>th</sup> the french-  
men, & being not able to retyze with-  
out battell, were enforced to feight, in  
the which they were soone ouercome, &  
for asmuche as they durst not repayze  
tot heir campe, they had none other  
way to saue themselves but by flight.  
The Frenchmen getting the vpper  
had both of y<sup>e</sup> Gothes & tharmy of Be-  
lisarius

## Gothes in Italy. 80.

Belisarius in one day, obtayned the campe  
 of them both also, & rested in them  
 finding good store of victuals in eche of  
 them. Traias fled to Rauenna, & the  
 souldiers of Belisari<sup>9</sup> through y<sup>e</sup> fields  
 of y<sup>e</sup> Placentines and Parmenses gate  
 ouer y<sup>e</sup> mountaine Appennine & went  
 into Petruria. This sodain cōming of  
 the Frenchmen troubled both Vitigis  
 & Belisarius. The thing that Belisari<sup>9</sup>  
 us feared most, was least the French-  
 men should come into Petruria & op-  
 presse his army that besieged Fesules.  
 For through y<sup>e</sup> fields of the Placenti-  
 nes & Parmenses, it is but a shorte & a  
 redy way into Petruria. But y<sup>e</sup> french  
 mē whē they had taried a whyle about  
 Po, & coulde fynde neyther wyne nor  
 other necessaries (the countrey beyng  
 left bare by meanes of the long conti-  
 nuance of the warre) so that they had  
 nothyng to feede on but Beof, nor  
 nothyng to drynke but the water of  
 the ryuer, within short space they fell  
 into diuers diseases.

The French-  
 men retourne  
 againe into  
 Fraunce.

Of



## Of the warre of the

Of the which forasmuch as they dyed in great number, they determined to retire backe, and so they went home againe into Fraunce, & very same way that they came oute over the Alpes.

Fesules is yel:  
ded the Impe  
rallcs.

This was the ende of the Frenchmens voyage into Italy. The Gothes that were beseged w<sup>in</sup> Fesules, being sore constrained w<sup>o</sup> hunger, when they saw that rescow was often promised & yet none came, at length yeldded by the towne to Justine and Ciprian by composition. When they had receiued the towne & placed a garrison therin, they went w<sup>o</sup> all the rest of their army vnto Aurimum. For Vitigis had promised to come w<sup>o</sup> all his whole power to raise the sege before Aurimum. And forasmuch as Traias was then with hym, it was none other like but he would haue done so in dede. By reason wherof Belisarius was compelled to gather all his power aboute him out of other places, to the intent that after hys long continued syege, he would not be setts beside

## Gothes in Italy. 81.

beside his purpose. But when this often promised succour came not, and yet they stiffly held their owne to thutter, most, Belisarius determyned to compell them to yelde by some extremitye managre they hartes for the compassing wherof he inuented this pollicie.

### The.viii.Chapter.

How after that Belisarius had corrupted the water of a certayne well nere vnto Auximum the towne men yelded themselves and the towne vnto hym by composition. The belyeginge of Rauenna by Belisarius and of hys wonderfull good fortune, and his wise dealing there at such tyme as the Frenche Ambassadors came thither, in somuch that he caused the offers of the Frenchemen to be reiected and a Truce to be taken for further communication to be had wyth the Emperour for a small peace and agreement. Duryng the whyche Truce the storehouses and garners of corne in Rauenna are sette on fyre no man can tell how.

L. L.

With

## Of the watre of the

**W**ithin a stones cast of the walles  
of Aurimum, on the north side  
of the towne there was a wel w  
a very freshe spring the which Belisa-  
rius purposed to take from theym, by  
cause he perceiued that the townsmen  
had none other place to fetch water at  
but onely there. To bring this matter  
to effect he commaunded his aringe to  
be in armour by the dauninge of the  
next day, and to geue an approach to the  
walles. The Gothes thinkinge they  
had prepared them to thassault, placed  
themselves orderly vppon the battell  
ments. Belisarius in the meane time  
sent fve men conninge in such feats,  
with mattocks and ares, well pau-  
shed w the bucklars and tergattes of a  
great number that were sent w them  
for their defence, to vndermine the  
well and to cutte downe the tymer  
work. Who as soon as they came there  
dyd get them vnder the shed that coue-  
red the well, & being saufe out of dan-  
ger from the walles, beganne to digge  
downe

shielded.  
secured. by Pass. by gunn magne  
protected, as it were, with a Skinner.  
moment. Sayre-vell.

## Gothes in Italy 82.

downe the Mason worke. But when  
 the Gothes perceiuinge that all their  
 endeouour was about heuing downe  
 the well, they yssued out of the towne  
 and assailed theym verie fierse. The  
 fraye was harde vnder the walles in a  
 place of aduantage and easie to the  
 Gothes coming downe to the defence  
 of the well, but very vntoward and vn-  
 indifferent for the souldiers of Belisa-  
 rius to make assault in. In this conflict  
 were many slaine, but most of Belisa-  
 rius souldiers, for the Gothes darting  
 fro aloft, myght easily endamage their  
 enemies. Howbeit Belisarius was e-  
 uer at hand calling still vpon hys men  
 and encouraging them w a loud voice  
 and would not suffer theym to geue  
 backe, but euer put freshe men in the  
 places of suche as were wounded or  
 slaine. This encounter being begonnie  
 by the sunne rising, lasted vntil noone.  
 At the last his souldiers pearling stout-  
 ly vpon the Gothes, compelled theym  
 to recople into the towne. Then they

An encoun-  
 ter about brea-  
 king downe  
 of a well.

In this were  
 slaine of Beli-  
 sarius souldiers



## Of the warre of the

returned backe and called away those that were digging downe y<sup>e</sup> well, supposinge that they had dispatched their worke. But they had done litle or nothing to the purpose in mining downe of the Mason worke. The cause therof was by reason that y<sup>e</sup> well being made in old time, was wrought so close and so sure, that it had bene an easier matter to cutte a piece out of a whole quarre then to haue dygged downe any parte of the wall of it. When it was perceyued howe that all that they had done, and all they<sup>r</sup> feyghtynge was but lost labour, Belisarius caused the rest of the water to be infected w<sup>th</sup> the Juice of venemous herbes, w<sup>th</sup> stynkinge Carions of dead cattell, and w<sup>th</sup> a kynde of stone called Asuest so longe untill he had utterlye marred it, that it was not to be occupied any more, so that the Gothes fyndynge scarcetye of water by the mystre of thys well, had muche a doe to reueue theym selues w<sup>th</sup> that litle and

## Gothes in Italy.

83

and corrupted water that they had in  
fylthye puddles wythin the towne.

After thys Belisarius neuer soughte  
to disquiet theym anye more , eyther  
by skermisshyng or by anye other mea-  
nes , but satte styll peaceablye to be-  
holde the ende of the matter . At  
length mention was made of yeloping  
and the Gothes requested that they  
myghte departe to Raucenna wythe  
bagge and baggage . Belisarius hea-  
ryng the; demaundes , was in  
doubte what he were beste to dooe.

For he thoughte , that to lette goe so  
manye good men of warre and therby  
to augment the strengthe of hys ene-  
mies y were at Raucenna, shuld be no-  
thing to y profite of y weale publique:  
Again to sit spending of y time in vaine  
about Aurimú, he thought perillous &  
preiudicial, inespacially seing it was re-  
ported y y frechme were cōming to the  
aid of y Gothes. But most of al stoud  
in contentiō w him his own souldiers,  
who in recōpens of their miseries and

## Of the warre of the

calamities endured at their longe continued siege, looked of dutie to haue the spoyle of the towne, and would not in anye wise suffer themselves to be defrauded therof by anye composition or agreement. Finally when on thone side the Gothes were soze pinched w<sup>th</sup> penurie and scarcetic of things necessarie, and on thother side Belisarius in manner forced by the impoztunitie of the tyme, at length throughe Belisarius greate trauell the matter was concluded, that the one halfe of all that was in the towne should be geuen to hys souldiers for theyr share, and the Gothes shoulde keepe the other halfe styll, prouided that the Gothes whiche were wythin the towne of Auximum, shoulde serue Belisarius in hys warres, in lyke case and estate wyth other of hys souldyers. After thys sorte were thynges knytte vppon and the Towne surrendered accordyng to the composition. When Belisarius had thus gotten Auximum into

Auximum yel  
ded to Belisari-  
rins.

into hys hande , he assembled all hys  
power together , myndyng to procede Belisarius go-  
eth to besege  
agaynst Vitigis and Rauenna . As Rauenna.  
sone as he came thither , by and by

he sent Marimus one of his captaines  
w<sup>th</sup> parte of hys armye to watche and  
keepe the banckes of the Ryuer Po,  
to thentent that nothyng shoulde be  
conueyed into Rauenna that waye.

For one of the mouthes of that ryuer  
falleth into the Sea not farre from  
Rauenna , from whence there is a  
certayne dyche cutte oute of the whole  
ground, wherin the ryuer is conueyed  
to the Towne . Belisarius therefore  
myndinge first & foremost to disappoint  
them of this commoditie, gaue Mari-  
mus charge to keepe the hythersyde of  
the Ryuer w<sup>th</sup> that bande that he had  
deliuered vnto him . Vitalis also com-  
ming out of Dalmatia at the comman-  
dement of Belisarius, had committed  
vnto him the keeping of the further side  
w<sup>th</sup> another band. There happened the  
same tyme a wondrous chaunce , &

The wonder-  
full good for-  
tune of Beli-  
sarius.



## Of the warre of the

— Such a strang thing as hath not lightly bene heard of. For as a great number of shippes and galeyes were comyng out of Fraunce laden wyth corne and victualles makinge sayle toward Rauenna, the Riuer fell so lowe, that many of the ships stood styll for want of water to beare them. Wherby it came to passe y they were all taken by the soldiers of Belisarius. This was y first token of good lucke wherw fortune beganne to further the procedynges of Belisarius. For it could not be remembred that euer any such thyng had hapened befoze. By this meanes was al libertye of carpyng in and out by the ryuer Do cutte of from Rauenna. As so; by sea nothing could be conuycied in by reason that the enemies of y Gothes were euery where lordes of the sea. Agayne on the land Belisarius wyth his armye kept them so short, that he would not suffer oughte to be carped that way. Whyle Rauenna was thus straighlye besyged, there came Ambassa

## Gothes in Italy. 85.

Ambassadours out of Fraunce to Vitigis, offering that the Frenchemen should come into Italy and rayse the syege, and doubtlesse to sea Belisarius wyth all hys armye, yf so be yt that the Gothes woulde be content to admitte them as coparterners of their Emppre. This stout bragge made by the french Ambassadors, dyd set the hearers harts in a pyrd. For thei promysed to bring syue hundred thousand men of warre, whose comyng (if he were in hys righte wyttes) Belisarius woulde neuer abyde. For yf he did, they threatened to swetch hym and all hys compaignye wyth theyr holberdes. These hygge wordes dyd partly pufte vp Vitigis & hys Gothes w<sup>th</sup> pryde, & partly made them afraid. For if the Frenchmen came into Italy, it was not to be doubted that they shuld get the vpper hand, but it was a difficult matter to be beleued, that they would keepe touche and play the good fellows in parting of the Emppre.

French Ambassadors to Vitigis.

2. swich

L.v.

And

## Of the warre of the

Belisarius sen-  
deth commis-  
sioners to Vi-  
tigis.

And therfore yf the Frenchmen shuld  
come they mistrusted least they would  
be as much to their confusion as to the  
confusion of their enemies. This doubt  
of theirs Belisarius helped to increase.  
For he beyng a sage Captayne and  
politique in all affayres, as sone as  
he knewe of the commynge of the  
Frenche Ambassadors, sent his com-  
missioners also to Rauenna, both to  
offer the Gothes peace and attone-  
ment wyth the Emperour, and al-  
so to wythdrawe thym from societie  
wyth the Frenchmen, by puttyng  
them in remembrance of their former  
unfaythefull dealinge. The Gothes  
when they had hearde the Frenche  
Ambassadors and Belisarius Com-  
missioners what coulde be alledged  
on bothe sides, takinge deliberation  
what was best to be done, after longe  
debating of & on, preferred thattone-  
ment w<sup>th</sup> the Emperour. By thys mea-  
nes the French Ambassade was dis-  
missed wout the thing that they came

1. on- uisitation.

for

## Gothes in Italy. 86.

for, and often treaties were had w<sup>th</sup> Belisarius concerning the same, and by uers commissioners and messengers went to and fro for conclusion thereof. Finallye thys was the ende of the matters debated. That the determination of all controuersies should be referred to the discretion of the Emperour Justinian. Herebypon Ambassadors were sent to hym and a Truce was taken betwene the besygers and the beseged. In the meane while it fortuneth that the common storehouses at Rauenna and all the corne in them was burned vp, & mischaunce broughte the Gothes in greate distresse, consyderynge theyr owne corne was burnt vp, and Belisarius woulde not suffer any more to be brought in, the whych (he sayde) he dyd vpon this consideration, to the entent the Gothes shoulde be agreable to more indifferent articles of attenuement. Howebeit Vitigis was in a mercenylous mistrust, because it could not be

Truce betwene the Gothes and the imperials

The storehouses are set on fire.



## Of the warre of the

be learned by what meanes the fyre  
came. Some thought they were set a  
fier w<sup>th</sup> lightnig, other supposed it to be  
done by some malicious persons, & o-  
ther some mistrusted that Belisarius  
should be the doer of it. The Quene  
also was suspected for y<sup>e</sup> matter. Who  
forasmuch as she was forced to marry  
w<sup>th</sup> Vitigis against her will, was ther-  
fore demed to beare hatred and malice  
towarde hym in her harte. This bur-  
nyng of the grayne dyd greatly trou-  
ble Vitigis and the Gothes, & brought  
them in maner to vtter dyspayre. For  
if the fyre came by lyghtninge, they  
mighte thinke that God and the hea-  
uens were agaynste theym. Dyd it  
were done of a set purpose, they wyl-  
d not whom they might truste. So were  
they lyke wythin a whyle to be quyte  
w<sup>th</sup>oute corne, and withoute all hope of  
commynge by any more, because y<sup>e</sup> Bell  
sarius after the burninge of the store-  
houses, looked more straitlye to theym  
that none should be conueyed in.

The

# Gothes in Italy 87.

¶ The. ix. Chapter.

**D**yuers of the Gothes become Imperiall, The Emperour sendeth hys Ambassadors wyth articlles of peace to Rauenna the whiche of the Gothes are well liked and ioyfully receyued. But Belisarius perceyuing that more aduantage is to be gotten otherwise wyl not subscribe vnto them, by meanes whereof riseth a suspicion that Belisarius wyll make hymselfe Emperour, the whych the Gothes beyng glad of, to further the same, proferre their submission and obedience vnto him, and he accepteth it promising to take, his othe at Rauenna for performauce of their demands wherupon he is receiued royally into the town, & dismisserh the most part of the Gothish souldiers, through whose departure having made himself strong, he vnterly refuseth to vsurpe as long as the emperour iustinian liueth. The gothes in Paue create a new king who maketh profer of submission vpon like condition the whych Belisarius vnterly reiecteth, & carieth vnto prisoner to Constantinople with diuers of his noble men and all his Threasures.

**A**bout this tyme many of y Gothes that inhabited the Alpes, sent word to Belisarius that they woulde yelde themselues vnto him. There

The reuolting of certayne Gothes. to Belisarius.

## Of the warre of the

There are vppon the Alpes many castles, the which in old tyme were kept by the Gothes placed there to dwell.

For Chalpes do disseuer Italy from Fraunce, ryling of a wonderful hight very hard to clymb vnto or to passe ouer, the which passages it was expedient to be well kept. And therefore Theodorich kyng of the Gothes dyd both place a puyssaunt company of his countrey men with their wyues and chyldezen in those wast grounds, and also buylded them castles & holds. Sigis one of the Gotische nobilitie, who had certain Castles in Chalpes, was the first of all that of his frewill receyued the souldyers sent into those coasts by Belisarius, perswading other Castles to do the lyke. The same tyme Atrias was in Lumbardy, musteryng of souldyers to carpe wyth hym to Rauenna. He had already raised an army of foure thousand men. Of the which the most part were inhabiteurs of Chalpes. Who hearyng that Sigis was reuolted

molsted to their enemies, & that the Castles wherein they had their wyues & chyldzen were assayled, they compelled Araias first & formest to lead them thither. Wherebypon he tookc his iourney w<sup>th</sup> al the power that he had raised, into ThAlpes, and there besieged Sigis and the souldyers of Belisarius. When newes of this gere came to John Italian and Martine, who the same tyme had theyr campe in Lumbardy, they also without further tarryance marched toward ThAlpes, & toke certain Castles in theyr waye. In the same were taken many of the wyues and chyldzen of them that serued vnder Araias. When the fathers, husbands, & kinfolke of them had knowledge thereof, they forsooke Araias campe & fled to theyr enemies, to the entent to recover them againe.

Araias being thus forsaken of hys owne souldyers, returned with a few into Lumbardy, & neuer set his minde any mo<sup>re</sup> eyther about masteryng of  
other



## Of the warre of the

other souldiers, or succouringe such as were besieged. So Vitigis & the Gothes that were at Rauenna, beyng forsaken of their owne people & destitute of all hope of comforte, were still besieged and suffered euerye day more distresse then other. Whyle the Gothes stode in this estate, thainbassadours returned fro thempour, Dominicus & Marimus both of the Senate. They brought Iustiniens aunswere to those demaunds that Vitigis & the Gothes had made as concerning the concord & agreement. The summe of the Emperours decree was this. That Vitigis should hold styll all that he had beyond the ryuer Po, & surrender all that he had on thes syde. That he should deliuer to the Emperour thone half of his treasure, & kepe the other half for himselfe & that all the Gothes inhabityng on the hyther syde of the Ryuer Po, should become subiectes to thempere of Rome. When the Ambassadours had first conferred w<sup>th</sup> Belisarius, they

ente.

The answer  
of the Empe-  
rour to the  
demaunds of  
the Gothes.

## Gothes in Italy. 89

entered into Rauenna and declared their commission, the which things both Vitigis and the noble men of the Gothes were glad to here, and consented thereto with all their hartes. But Belisarius was very sorie to see it. For it spited him to the hart, that when he might fully haue had the victorie of the Gothes, it shoulde be taken out of his hand. And therefore anon after when the commissioners returned, and requested him to subscribe the articles he would not put to his hand. The which thing brought the Gothes in a merueylous maze, fearing to be deceyued vnder a counterfet pretense of peace. In so much that they beganne to saye openly, they woulde doe nothyng as concernyng the peace, without the consent of Belisarius. Ambassadors themselves and suche as were chiefe officers in the Campe, were greatly displeased with Belisarius doing, and thought he dyd not well in disobeyng the imperours commaundement.

A crafty & subtle  
tell kynde of  
dealing.

¶.

And

## Of the warre of the

And thercbypon bred a suspicion, as though Belisarius went aboute to make him self emperour, & were vtterly minded to wdrawe his obediens fro Justinian. This suspicion was almost in euery mans head at that time with the which opiniõ the Gothes being induced, sent priuely vnto him, exhorting him to take þe west Emperre vpon him himselfe, and not to acquire it to another. For if he woulde so do, they sayde that the Gothes woulde be contented to become his subiectes, & to obey him with all theyr harts, & that he shoulde soontly enioy the kingdome of the Italians & the Gothes, together w an incomparable puissans. These thinges were wrought priuely by the Gotische nobilitie. Vitigis perceyuinge that suche proffers were made, sent his messengers also vnto Belisarius encouraging hym vnto the same. Belisarius pondering these thynges wth hymselfe, and considering they myght be greatiye for hys behoofe, yf they were handeled

## Gothes in Italy. 90

handeled wisely, sent alwaye into sundrie places with theyr bandes, John Vitallian, Vellias, & Aratus, men of much authoritie in hys campe, but in no wyse his frendes, pretendinge an excuse as thowge so greate armyes coulde not well be victualled together in one place, and that they shoulde finde more plentie & abundaunce of victuall and forage in other places.

This excuse was pretended, but in dedde they were sent alwaye to the content that with their presence they should not interrupt him of his doings. Afterwardes he him selfe summoning befoze him all the officers of his campe, when he had sufficiently debated with them as concerning the distresse that the Gothes were broughte vnto, what woulde you saye (q he) yf we shoulde by this warre attayne at theyr handes, not onely those things where, wylth the Emperour seemeth to be contented, but also greater thynges.

.P.ij. Every



## Of the warre of the

Every man for hym selfe commended that greater thyngs shoulde be attempted if it might be. When he hard them saye so, withoute further disclosinge of the matter, he dismissed the counsell. And therebpon he sent one of his company to Rauenna, aduertising the Gothes that he was contented to do as they had counselled hym, exhorting them to make speede in the matter. The Gothes as they were alreadye oppressed with famine, without any delay sent theyr commissioners fully authorised by the prince and the common consent of them all vnto Belisarius. These persons when they came into the camp spake nothyng before the souldyers, but talkynge with Belisarius alone, tolde hym that they were come to receyue his faythfull promise and othe for thaccomplishment of the matter before debated. There were two kinde of promises propounded by them, wher vnto they required him to be sworne. Whome was that he shoulde gouerne them

## Gothes in Italy. 51

them with iustice and equitie, mainteyne and supporte the customes and lawes of the Gothes, and not be offended against any of them for ought that had bene done in tymes past, with diuers other things of lyke purport. The other was that he shoulde from hence forth proclaime himselfe king of Italy & of the Gothes. If he woulde agree to these articles & be sworne to the performance of them, they would set open their gates & receyue hym & all his armye into Rauenna. Belisarius sware to all thother demaundes according as the commissioners had requested, but concernynge the takynge of the kingdome vppon him, he sayde he woulde take hys othe before Vitigis & his noble men when he was come to Rauenna. The commissioners mistrusting not but that he would haue hys king in dede, delayed the takynge of his othe in that behalfe, as though he shoulde haue performed the same before the noble men immediatly vppon

## Of the warre of the

the cause why  
Belisa. would  
not take vpon  
him to be em  
perour.

the yelding  
of Rauenna  
to Belisarius.

his comming to Rauenna. But Belisarius purposed nothing lesse. For Iulianian when he made him Lieutenant generall of the warres, had bounde him with a great othe, that he shoulde not take vpon him nor vsurpe the kingdome or Emperre, as long as he were alque, nor yet suffer himself to be accounted or called by the name of tyrant, king or Emperour. This his othe he was determined to keepe vniuolated, & did but daly wyth the Gothes in that behalfe. Vpon this composition the Gothes verie desirously called Belisarius into the towne. And he with hys armye in royall order, and wyth hys shippes trymly decked, brynnyng in them abundaunce of all kynde of victualles, entered into Rauenna to the great reioycement of the Gothes and theyr armye. Nowe because there were a great number of men of warre of the Gothes wythin the towne, Belisarius myndynge to abate theyr power, wythin a few daies after

## Gothes in Italy. 92

after hys comming thither, licensed all such to departe home, as dwelled on thys syde the ryuer Po. They beyng wearied wpth theyr longe continued warfare, were verpe willing to retourne home to their frendes. And so the multitude that was at Rauenna being diuinished, the armye of Belisarius waxed the stronger, and were euen as Lordes of the towne. As thinges fell oute in this wyse the nobilitie of the Gothes that dwelled in anye part of all Italy, eyther came them selues, or elles sent their commissioners vnto Belisarius to Rauenna.

But when Belisarius beganne to make delays in the takynge vppon hym of the kingdome, men beganne to maruell what he shoulde meane, and also to cast doubt of hys doynges.

The wyche suspicion was augmented vppon the sodayne sendynge of Iustinian vnto Belisarius commaund-  
Belisarius is sent for out of Italy.  
 yng hym to retourne home.

M.iiij.

Fo.



## Of the warre of the

For the same went & certain had made report to the Emperour, that Belisarius went about to make himself king of Italy, & had already taken it upon him. For feare wherof Justinian sent for him immediatly out of Italy. The Gothes perceyuing that, coulde not at the first by any meanes persuaade them selves, that he would returne to their perour Justinian. But when they saw preparation made for the same, and all thynges put in a readinesse toward his iourney, then they knewe well ynoughe that Belisarius had worne them in by a trayne and had utterly deceived them. But what remedy? For he had both the towne and their noble men in his hand, so that they could not so much as bewayle their misfortune one to another, but that he must nedes be priue to it. When the Gothes that dwelt on the further syde of Po, heard tydings hereof, they assembled themselves togyther at Daupe, and there bewaylyng one to another the commo misfor

## Gothes in Italy. 93.

misfortune of their nation, and the deceitfullnesse of Belisarius, at length would haue made Thraias theyr kyng. The whych thyng he would not in any wyse suffer them to doe, excusing himselfe by thys reason, that so: as much as he was Vitigis brothers sonne, he myght not seeme to haue done eyther lyke a kynsman or lyke an honest man yf he shuld take þe kyngdome vpon him whyles Vitigis were alpye. Through thys allowable excuse alledged for hymselfe, he was the occasion that Ildouade a man of great auctoritie and power amonge the Gothes, and which had bene ruler of Theron a longe tyme before, was created kyng. Ildouade therefore beyng sent for oute of Theron vnto Rauene, was there inuested in hys purple Robes of estate, and proclaimed kyng of the Gothes, to the entent he shoulde studie and take care for the safeguard of hys countrey men. Beyng in thys sorte made kyng, he sent ambassadours by & by to Rauena

Vraias refused to be made kyng of the Gothes.

Ildouade is made king of the Gothes.

## Of the warre of the

The effect of  
the ambassade  
sent by Ildo-  
uade to Beli-  
sarius.

unto Belisarius, geating them charge  
to put hym in remembraunce of hys  
promise lately made for the taking vp-  
on him of the kingdome of Italy & of  
the Gothes, not letting to reprove him  
openly of breakinge his faithfull pro-  
mise, through whiche cautel the Go-  
thes were deceyued. Wherefore if he  
would yet accomplishe his promise in  
proclaiming him selfe kyng, and shewe  
the same in his doings, Ildouade offe-  
red him selfe to come to Rauenna, & to  
laye of hys robes of estate at hys fete.  
But yf he had rather be themperours  
flaue then to be Emperour himself, he  
oughte not to be discontented though  
Ildouade & the Gothes that remayned  
endcuoured to provide for the sauf-  
gard of theyr weale publique. Thys  
was the summe of theyr ambassade.  
Belisarius answered openly thereun-  
to, that as long as the Emperour Ju-  
stinian lyued, he would neuer take vp-  
pon him to be kyng. Wpith thys an-  
swere the Ambassadors returned  
to

An example  
of a faithfull  
subiect and of  
an inuincible  
mynde.

**Gothes in Italy. 94**

to Alouade unto Paule. And Belisarius hauinge decked his shippes, sayled towarde Constantinople with Vitigis and dyuers other noble men of the Gothes, and all the kynges Threasure, the fyfth yere after the warre was begonne

**in Italy.**

(\*)

**The**



# The thyrd booke of Lenard Aretine, concer- nyng the warres in Italy against the Gothes.

## The first Chapter.

¶ The entertainement that Belisarius and his prisoners had at Constantinople. A commendation of Belisarius good gouernement, by comparison betwene hym and the Captaines that succeded hym.



¶ When Belisarius was come to Constantinople & Emperour Iustinian welcomed hym with great ioy, and hauing hym in great reputation and honour, put out of mynd all mistrust that he had conceyued of his doinges before. The Gothes whom he had brought with him were entertayned very gently and courteously, and men wondered to beholde theym: the whych mighte seme to haue chaunced not

**Gothes in Italy.** 95.

not without good cause. For there was  
Vitigis king of the Gothes that of late  
had besieged Rome with such a mul-  
titude; and his wyfe Amululenta,  
the nece of Theoderich sometime king  
of the Gothes who first brought them  
into Italy, and there gaue them posses-  
sions. Furthermoze there were the two  
sonnes of Ildouade then kynge of the  
Gothes, whom Belisarius sending in  
the Courte of Vitigis at Rauenna,  
wold not suffer to depart, but brought  
them away w<sup>th</sup> hym into Grece. There  
were other noble men of the Gothes  
also, whom al men beheld, wondering  
at the puissans of Belisarius, that had  
atcheued so great exploytes, and extol-  
ling him with prayles to the skye, in  
that he had lately before subdued Aph-  
rycke, and now Italy, vnder the domi-  
nion of Iustinian. And thus went the  
worlde in Grece. In Italye after the  
departure of Belisarius, the order  
of thynges by the commaundment of  
the Emperour was committed to the  
discretion

What they  
were whome  
Belisarius  
brought pri-  
soners to Con-  
stantinople.

The prayse  
of belisarius.

Of the warre of the  
discretion of John, of Bellas, & of Vi-  
talis. Constantian also was come out  
of Dalmatia, & was added to the number  
of the Gouvernours. It was some tene  
what difference there was betwene the  
government of these men & of Belisa.  
For (to omitte his skilfulnesse in feats  
of warre & chenaltrie wherin he far sur-  
mounted al the Captaines of his time)  
there was in him a singuler humani-  
tie & gentleness, through the which he  
exhibited himself aswell to the poore, as  
to the rich. There was no maner of per-  
son, but might have easie & free accesse  
to his presens: & besides that, he was  
wonderous bountifull & liberall. Un-  
to his souldiers that had lost theyr hoz-  
ses, weapons and armour (so it were  
not cowardly) so that with he gaue new  
agayne. Of the husbandmen he had  
so great regarde, that in leading of his  
armie, he would not suffer any of them  
to be hurte, or endamaged. His souldi-  
ers durste not be so bolde as to touche  
the Apples hanging on the trees.

Through

## Gothes in Italy. 96.

Through this his straightnesse in obseruing the lawe of armes, he obtained that his campe was more plentifully serued, then the marketts in any citie. So free and without peryll was the conueyance of all things that were to be solde. His byrightnesse towarde suche Cyties as were in societie and leage wpyth hym, no man is able to repute as it deserved. Men myghte heare of the great good tournes that he dyd for them, but not that he bered or molested any of them.

But as for them that succeeded hym, they were nothyng like hym, neyther in humanitie, neyther in prowesse, neyther yet in byrght dealinge. For bothe they them selues were Wyllers and Wollers, and also they suffered theyr Shoulders to fall into all kynde of licentiousnesse & disorder, beyng proude to theyr partakers, and easie inough to be entreated toward their enemies, by meanes wherof within short space matters began to  
go



**O**f the warre of the  
goe cleane backward, and to flyde in  
to open and manifest ruine, as I shall  
shewe you hereafter.

The. ij. Chapter.

**T**he diligence of Ildouade kinge of the  
Gothes, the greate misgouernance of the  
Imperiall Captaines, by meanes whereof  
they be brought lowe and the Gothes in-  
creased in strength and courage. The death  
of Vraias, the death of Ildouade, the elec-  
tion and death of Ataricus, and the electi-  
on of Totilas.

**I**ldouade beyng newly created  
kyng of the Gothes (as I decla-  
red before) after the departure of  
Belisarius, went in hand wyth hys  
matters very diligently. For he gaue  
commaundement that all the Gothes  
and all the Italians that fauored the  
Gothys the parte, should at a daye ap-  
poynted meete all together readye  
furnished with armour at Paue. His  
army at the beginning was verye slen-  
der, but it continually increased & every  
daye

daye was in better hope and comfort  
then other. The covetousnesse and  
wrongful dealing of their aduersaries  
dyd not a lytle helpe the Gothish part.  
For the collectours of Justinian vnder  
the colour of forseptures and arrears  
began to bere the people of Italy  
maruelous bytterlye, and to compell  
theym to the payment of summes that  
were neuer due. For by calling an ac-  
count of all thyngs that the Italians  
had taken charge of in the tyme of  
Theoderich fyrste kynge of the Go-  
thes, or of anye other of the Kynge  
that succeded hym, together wyth the  
accompte of all suche offices as anye  
Italian had bozne durynge the sayde  
tyme, and mozeouer by making in-  
quisition for the money lately promy-  
sed by the Cypres to the Gothes, the  
whych they chalenged to the Empe-  
rour as due by the name of forsepture,  
they broughte euerye man pruatellye  
and all the Cypres generallye in suche  
a despayre, that they wyshed y Gothes

The iniuri-  
ous dealing  
of the Empe-  
perours Col-  
lectours cau-  
seth great al-  
teration.

70 **Of the Warre of the**

to be lordes of all againe & therewithpon  
many, of their owne free will revolted  
to Aldouade, helpinge to augment the  
number & strength of his armie. The  
lyke grudge was also in the Emperours  
armie. For loke with what greedines  
the money that was neuer due was  
exacted of the Italians, with like pin-  
ching were the souldiers restrayned of  
theyr due deserued wages. There  
was no regarde had of any thyng but  
one, which was to satisfie the Empe-  
rours unsatiable couetousnes, by ga-  
thering of money and spendinge none  
again. And therfore as well the soul-  
diers as the Italians, beyng constrai-  
ned with so great wronges, sought to  
bryng the Emperre to decaye. By mea-  
nes whereof Aldouade daylye grow-  
ynge stronge, brought vnder hys o-  
beylance all the Cyties beyonde the  
Ryuer Po, and all the Cyties per-  
tepaynynge to the estate of Venice, and  
hys armie was fullie furnished with

## Gothes in Italy. 98

Throughe the whiche within a while  
he was so encouraged, that he was  
not a stranger to leade his armye into  
open feld, & to try the fortune of battel.

This encounter was fought not farre  
fro \* Caruissim against Vitalis one  
of the Emperours Captaines. In the  
which Iobitade gettinge souper hand  
made such a slaughter of Vitalis armye  
y<sup>e</sup> whiles the captaine himselfe w<sup>as</sup> a few  
flod away, all the rest were either slain  
or taken prisoners by the Gothes.

Throughe this victorie beinge so great &  
so notable, it is a wonder to see how the  
gothes were encouraged, & how much  
the power of their aduersaries was a-  
bated. In so much y<sup>e</sup> not only beyonde  
the Rhyne Po, and vnder the domini-  
on of Venice, but also all such as  
on this syde the Po, beloe of the Go-  
thelike part, were strongly strengthe-  
ned: and the name of Iobitade growe  
famous euen in the Emperours  
Court.

A battell be-  
twene Ido-  
nade and the  
imperialles.

\* Now called  
Trenizo.



OF THE DEATH OF

THE QUEEN MARY II  
AND THE DEATH OF  
THE KING CHARLES II

THE DEATH OF MARY II  
THE QUEEN OF ENGLAND  
AND THE DEATH OF  
THE KING CHARLES II

THE DEATH OF MARY II  
THE QUEEN OF ENGLAND  
AND THE DEATH OF  
THE KING CHARLES II

have been in better hope and confidence  
 than other. The emperor's new  
 original dealing with the  
 by a not a little helped the Cyprian party  
 for the collectors of Justinian's law  
 the colour of legislation and action  
 was begun to be the people of Italy  
 summoned by the emperor, and to compel  
 them to the payment of summs that  
 were never due. For by calling in the  
 count of all things that the Justinian  
 had taken charge of in the time of  
 Theoderich, by the means of the  
 then, as of the emperor of the Romans  
 that succeeded him, together with the  
 accounts of all such offices as any  
 Justinian had borne during the same  
 time, and moreover by making an  
 quisition for the money lately promi-  
 sed by the Cyprian to the emperor, the  
 emperor they challenged to the emperor  
 room as due by the name of legislation,  
 they brought every man's business  
 and all the Cyprian generally in face  
 a dispute, that they before the emperor  
 argued.

The initial-  
 our dealing  
 of the Empe-  
 perour Col-  
 lectours can-  
 seth great al-  
 liberation.

in the land of the Magar & the opposite  
many of them were killed & revolted  
to the Venetians, helping to augment the  
number & strength of his armies. The  
like grudge was also in the Emperor's  
armies. For he was so full of greediness  
the money that was never due long  
expected of the Italians, with the price  
which were the soldiers restrained of  
they due deferred wages. There  
was no regard had of any thing but  
one which was to satisfy the Empe-  
rours insatiable covetousness, by gar-  
thering of money and spending none  
again. And therefore as well the sol-  
diers as the Italians, being constrain-  
ed with so great wrongs, sought to  
bring the Emperour to decay. By mea-  
nes whereof Alphonso sayles greivous  
wage strange & brought under his ob-  
edience all the galleys beyonde the  
Maremma, and all the Etyopes per-  
taining to the state of Venice, and  
his army was fully furnished with  
number both of Italians and others.

Through





It was not long after this, that the  
King died, and the Duke of Burgundy  
succeeded him. The Duke of Burgundy  
was a very wise and valiant Prince,  
and he was very much beloved by his  
Subjects. He was a very good  
Christian, and he was very much  
loved by his People. He was a  
very good King, and he was very  
much loved by his People. He was  
a very good Christian, and he was  
very much loved by his People. He  
was a very good King, and he was  
very much loved by his People. He  
was a very good Christian, and he  
was very much loved by his People.

22

証

五

**YOUNG**

The death of Ildouade.  
 The death of Ataricus.  
 Torilas created king.  
 \* Now called Treuizo.

The death of Ildouade.

The death of Ataricus.

Torilas created king.

\* Now called Treuizo.

# Of the manner of the

.82.  
 And that Alphonso, as I shal  
 before was slaine, & of his dea-  
 ding to be in danger because he  
 was the more of his kinne sent himselfe to  
 a woman & made common with them  
 & caused to turne into them  
 such as he had rule of & to be in  
 of a kingdom into their hands.  
 A day was limited to performing of  
 matter. But ere that day came, the  
 wordes repeated & they had received  
 in death of Alphonso, & that they had  
 made. That in their king, a man neither  
 of his kinne nor of his able to defend  
 & to be against to great strength of  
 their enemies, began to incline to Al-  
 tilas the more husband of Alphonso, &  
 to wishe that he were their king. In co-  
 kind to be dispatched Alphonso out of  
 the way & made Alphonso king in dede.  
 Alphonso having the assistance of these  
 forces had happened in Alphonso found  
 great fault with his kingdom & toward  
 was of his captivities, & that the king &  
 their enemies were now in Alphonso a-  
 mong

The death of  
 Alphonso

The death of  
 Alphonso

The death of  
 Alphonso

The death of  
 Alphonso

The death of  
 Alphonso

The death of  
 Alphonso

The death of  
 Alphonso

among themselves, a young family  
 alterations & changes, they having so  
 great opportunity for the getting of their  
 matters, had being nothing at all. The  
 captives, among in this dishonorable  
 rebuke, as they together at Rome.  
 Where when it came to the point of their  
 as concerning the issue, it was thought  
 best, first, to send an army to  
 gain the little of them. For they had been  
 secretly put in hope of the getting of  
 the same. The captives were in number  
 that told the chief were, Godfrey  
 a Alexander lately sent, together with  
 person for the collection of his money.  
 Therefore setting forth with a great  
 army, when they approached upon the  
 place, they determined to put it in  
 a small the hope that was lately given  
 them. || For there was one, a young  
 noble man of that country, that had  
 a castle not far from the same. He  
 (so much as in his heart he was  
 partial) had allurements of one of  
 the going to let in a great army  
 upon

More the co-  
 ntrivance of  
 chivalles  
 and what  
 came of it







## Of the wars of the

drinking among themselves for the  
way before they had gotten it, when  
they should have made most speed for  
winning of the same. The matter quai-  
led about Hieron.

### The xiii. Chapter.

¶ Tochar by his pollicie overcometh the  
inward shall being of greater force and num-  
ber. In the which victo-  
ry he showed great Heroic.

After this the Cantabriges of Anti-  
rion, for because their attempt fell  
out for auncible and disobedient at  
Hieron, began to fall at debate among  
themselves. euerie man putting the  
fault in other. & thus they departing  
out of their quarters, they passed into  
the river. & marched toward a place  
where that time was a castle at the  
top of a hill hearing of the coming of his  
enemies called as many men of warre  
as he could with all speed possible. In  
the night time the cantabriges having  
passed





was so nere of his kinne, sent priuely to  
Kauenna & made compact with them  
perours capitaines to turne vnto them  
wth such as he had rule of & to yelo bp  
y tolon of Taruissum into their hãds.  
A day was limited for performans of y  
matter. But ere euer y day came, the  
Voiges repenting y they had reioyced  
in y death of Adouade, & that they had  
made Ataricus their king, a mā neither  
of wisdom nor courage able to defend  
y Cothes against so great strength of  
their enemies, began to encline to Lo  
tilas the nere kinsman of Adouade, &  
to wishe that he were their king. In cõ  
clusion they dispatched Ataricus out of  
the way, & made Lotilas king in dede.  
Justinian hauing intelligence of these  
things y had happened in Italy, found  
great fault wth unskilfulness & toward  
nes of his capitaines, y in al the tyme y  
their enemies were so at dissention a  
mong

matters, had done nothing at al. The  
captaines moued w<sup>th</sup> this dishonorable  
rebuke, assebled together at Rauenna.  
There when it came to consultation  
as concerning the war, it was thought  
best, first & foremost to send an armye a-  
gainst the cite Tiron. For they had ben  
secretly put in hope of shobteining of y<sup>e</sup>  
towne. The captaines were in number  
two of whō the chiefe were Constantian  
& Alexander lately sent thither by the em-  
perour for the collection of his money.  
Therefore setting forth w<sup>th</sup> a greate  
armye, when they approached neere to  
Tiron, they determined to putte in  
tryall the hope that was lately geuen  
theym. For there was one Martine  
a noble man of that Countrie that had  
a Castle not farre from Tiron: who  
(for as much as in his hart he was im-  
periall) had allured the keeper of one of  
the gates to let in y<sup>e</sup> emperours armye.

P. lili.

The

## Of the warre of the

The matter being in this wyse closely agreed vpon, when the capitaines came thither with their armye, they sent before one Artanades an Armentian with a number of pycked souldiers to take the gate, & there to awaite the coming of the rest of the hoste. No parte of promise was leste vnperformed in that place. For in the dead of the night when the souldyers came to the gate, the traitour set it wyde all open & let them into the Cytie. They enterynge in and havinge also taken the walles aboute the same, gaue notyce thereof to the rest of the armye. The Gothes perceiuing their enemies wythin the towne, fled out at another gate. The capitains hearinge that their men had taken the towne, marched forwarde. But ere euer they came there, they fell at alteration for the spoyle by y way, & staid foure miles from the Citie. In y meane while the daye brake. Now there is a castle aboue the citie of Meton which hath a very great prospect both into the towne

Note the con-  
ueroulnes of  
the imperialles  
and what  
came of it.

## Gothes in Italy. 101.

tolone, & also farre into the countrey. The Gothes which were fled into this hold, perceining few of their enemyes to be within the Citie, and the armyes to abyde still without makinge no approach toward the walles, sodainely issued out of the Castle, & aduenturyng thzough the citie, recovered to the gate where their enemies came in & shut it. The souldyers that were entered by night, were partly oppzessed, & partly flying to the walles made resistens frō aboue. Anone after, the captaines coming thither & finding the gate shut. although þe souldiers win called to the for help, desiring them not to abandon them in that sorte, yet notwithstanding they retired backe againe out of hand. Some of the souldiers leaped downe the walles & saued themselves: among which number was Attauades the Armemian their guide. The rest were either slaine or els taken prisoners. By this meanes thzough the misgouerment & couetousnes of the Captaines



A

**Of the warre of the**

striving amonge theymselfes for the  
prize before they had gotten it, when  
they shuld haue made most speede for  
winning of the same, the matter quai-  
led about Aleron.

The iiii. Chapter.

¶ Totilas by his pollicie overcommeth the  
Imperials being of greater force and num-  
ber then his army was, in the which victo-  
rie he sheweth great clemencie.

**A**fter this the Captaynes of Justi-  
nian (for because their attempt fell  
out so ylfauoredly and dishonorable at  
Aleron) began to fall at debate among  
theymselfes, euerye man putting the  
fault in other, & thereupon departyng  
out of those quarters, they passed ouer  
the riuer Po, & marched toward Plea-  
sans. At that time was Totilas at Pa-  
up who hearing of the comming of his  
enemies, raised as many men of warre  
as he could with all speede possible. In  
the meane tyme the captaynes hauing  
passed

# Gothes in Italy. 102.

passed beyond Pleasans, had entaped  
 themselves by the side of the river Po.  
 Totilas, albeit he were far ouermat-  
 ched, yet he determined to goe against  
 them w<sup>th</sup> suche power as he had and to  
 trie thadventure of battell. So when  
 both the camps approached nere togy-  
 ther, & that the encounter was fully re-  
 solved vpon by both parties, Totilas  
 in the nyghte tyng sent certayne of  
 his horsemen before, commanding  
 them to gette ouer the Ruer almost  
 twenty furlonges aboue the campe of  
 their enemies, & as soone as the bat-  
 tlel was ioyned, to retyre and assaile  
 the enemye behynde by the as muche  
 noyse and hurlyburlye as they could.  
 He himselfe (when he sawe his tyme)  
 marched towarde his enemyes. His  
 emperours captains did h<sup>is</sup> like. There  
 was in thosse of Totilas a Gothe cal-  
 led Alarus, myghty in a good coun-  
 sell and rethorick: who aduanci-  
 ng himself before the battell, chalenged  
 to fight with any man hard to hand.  
 Against

A combare  
 hand to had;

## Of the warre of the

Against this man offered himselfe to the combat Artauades the Armenian of whome mencion was made in the entering into Hieron. So in the sight of both tharmies, they fetched their races & ranne one at another with their speares in the rest. Artauades thruste the Gothe through the right side with his speare so that he fell doونه dead. And he himself being driven by mischance wth the speare of the dead mā sticking in the ground through the only force & violence of his owne horse, ranne himself vppon the poynt of it, in so maner that it wounded him through his Curret, of the whiche wounde he dyed within thye dayes after. The two battelles in the meane tyme encountered very fiercely, & every man shewed bys conning what he was able to doe wth his weapon. When the battell was at the hottest, & that both parts wer most intentiffe to their feyghtings, blisiole as yet enclining to neyther side, & suddenly of Dordas whiche had passed the river

on the A  
bad or bad

## Gothes in Italy.

103.

river came & set vpon The Emperours  
 Captaines behind. Wher vpon arose a  
 great noise, & many being beaten  
 downe, first they brake the arraye of the  
 Emperours armye, & anone after put  
 them to open flight. For after the time  
 theyr battelles were once opened, their  
 enemies pressed so sore vpon them both  
 before & behind, y<sup>t</sup> they were sone disper  
 peled. Many were slain by the Gothes  
 in y<sup>e</sup> chace, & many escaped by bypathes  
 & vnknoen wayes. But the greatest  
 nūber was of the y<sup>e</sup> were take prisoners  
 Moreover (which neuer happened be  
 fore) al y<sup>e</sup> stādarde, bāners & antefiges,  
 of the Emperours army were taken in y<sup>e</sup>  
 battell, & being brought vnto Totilas,  
 made his victorie more famous & renou  
 med, in y<sup>e</sup> he hauing scars half so many  
 men in his armye as his enemies, had  
 unwittingly & willingly encountred w<sup>th</sup> a  
 greater power then his owne, of whome  
 thorough his marciall pollicie he had  
 gotten the victorie. Hauing thus gotten  
 the vpper hand, he vsed the victorie very  
 courte

The Imper  
 alls are van  
 quished by  
 Totilas.

The great &  
 dishonorable  
 losse in thys  
 battell.



The gentle-  
nes of Toti-  
las after hys  
victorie,

**O**f the watter of the  
courteously vering none of h prisoners  
but seding diuers away wout rāsonne.  
The which his gentlenesse dyd great-  
ly augmēt his honour and renoume.  
The captaines of Justinia y escaped,  
fled first vnto Pleasans, & from thence  
wēt eucry mā a sundry way, busping  
thēselues as much as might be in ray-  
sing a new armye of men.

The, v. Chapter.

¶ Iustine one of the mperours captaines is be-  
seged within Florens, & rescowed by tho-  
ther imperial captaines, who in the pursute  
of their enemies through an vntreue report  
cast in sodain feare are with great slaughter  
put to flight. Totilas reconereth diuers tow-  
nes in Lombardie, raiseth the walls of Bene-  
uent & besiegeth Naples. A comparison be-  
twene the good gouernement of Totilas  
and the misgouernaunce of the Imperiall  
Captaines.

**W**ithin a while after this victorie,  
Totilas now conceiuing greater  
things in his mind, sent an armie  
to Tetruria wherof he made captayns  
thre of the worthiest men of al the Go-  
thes

# Gothes in Italy. 104

gothes, Belas, Rodericke, & Tullaris.  
 There was in Vetruria a captain cal-  
 led Justine, one of those y had bene at  
 the foresaid battell. Who after the dis-  
 comfiture had neuer ceased leading of a  
 new power, & fortifying of the towne  
 neuertheles that mie of Totilas came  
 sodainly vpon him, & besieged him w<sup>th</sup>  
 y walls of Florens. Justine feared no-  
 thing so much as scarcety of victualles.  
 For nothing coulde be conueied in, &  
 that which was wythin alreadye, was  
 lyke to be soone spent. Wherevppon  
 he sent to the rest of the Captaynes at  
 Rauenna & aduertised theym in what  
 perill his estate stood, requesting them  
 of succour. Being moued w<sup>th</sup> this mes-  
 sage, Belas, Ciprian & John Tullian  
 came into Vetruria with their armies  
 when the Gothes had vnderstanding  
 of their appoach, by & by they brake vp  
 their siege & dislodged their campe, not  
 staying anye where, untill they came  
 to a place called Muciall whyche is a  
 dayes iourney from Florens.

the beseging  
 of Florens &  
 the raising of  
 the same.

## Of the warre of the

As sone as tharmy of confederats was entered into Florens, the Captaynes thought it good to leaue a few behynd theym for defence of the towne, & they themselves with all the rest of tharmy to marche against the enemye. Whyle they were on their way, it seemed good to some one of the Captaynes should goe quickly before to assault the enemye, & to stay him from going awaye, & the rest w<sup>th</sup> all speede should follow after. When lottes were cast, the charge of goynge before fell vnto John, who with his men in good order of battell, made haste towarde the enemye. Nowe the enemyes beinge afrayed at the coming of the hoste, forsoke the place where they had encamped themselves fyrst, and gate them to a hylle thereby bothe steepe and hard to clymbe vnto. Yet for all that John made no curtesye at the matter when he came to place, but directed hys battell agaynst the hylle, and w<sup>th</sup> a noble courage endeouored to get by by playne force. Hys enemyes stood

## Gothes in Italy. 105

stood earnestly at defence, as they that might easily make resistens from the higher ground. In this place whyles John Strout to get by, feightinge valiantly amonge the foremost, one of his companions was strikē through wth a pike and layne hard by his syde. Wherevpon forthwith rose an untrue rumour (which was lightly beleued) that John was layne, and therewithall his men began to runne awaye. The brute hereof beinge reported to them that came with the rest of that myce behynd, together wth the fearfull flyght of suche as were at the battell, made them also most shamefully to runne awaye. Neither was there any measure of their flyght, but scatteryng themselves here some & there some they brake their aray and forsoke their standard. By meanes whereof the Captaynes themselves were sayne to take theym to flyght also wthoute compulsion of any encinsio. After this time they came no more togither againe, but every mā

An untrue report cause of a shamefull discomfiture.

D.i.

kept



## Of the warre of the

kept by himself one in one towne and another in another , as they had recovered vnto oute of the chace . Yet for all that , the Gothes retourned not to the syege of Florens , partly for feare of the greate power of theyr enemye, the whiche although it were dispersed, yet was it still within the compasse of Etruria, and partly because the winter was nere. Thys was the ende of the seuen yeres synce Belisarius beganne the warres fyrste . The nexte yere following , as sone as the tyme of the yere serued to encampe in the fielde . Totilas leued an armye and came into Lumbardy, and there besieged Cesen , and Petra the whiche towne is now a dayes commonly called by a corrupte name Bzetines , as for all the reste of the townes of that countrey , for the most parte eyther he had wonne them by force, or els taken them by composition, whē he had thus compassed his matters in that countrey , he passed from thence with his  
armie

Totilas recovered towns  
in Lumbardy

armie into Petrusia. Where finding al  
 thynges whoter for hym then he loo-  
 ked for; he determyned fullpe not to  
 spende hys tyme in wastte about them.  
 And therefore passing ouer the ryuer  
 Tyber which bowndeth Petrusia, he  
 tooke hys iourney throughe the Um-  
 bres, the Sabines; and the Marses  
 into Campanye; in the whych place  
 he wonne the Cytie of Beneuent,  
 and rased downe the walles of it to  
 the grounde. For he was loth that  
 so stronge and defensible a Citie shuld  
 be leste for hys enemyes; (yf they  
 shoulde happen to comine into these  
 borders; to make theyr Bulwarke  
 and fortresse of. The whiche done  
 he besyged Naples; hauynge fyrste  
 entreated theym gentlye wth many  
 wordes; that they woulde rather  
 accepte hys frendshyppe, then procure  
 hys displeasure. But hys wordes were  
 to no purpose. For there was in garri-  
 son Conon one of Iustinians Cap-  
 taines wth a band of not so fewe as a

rotilas rased  
 the walles of  
 Beneuent;

The syege of  
 Naples.

D.ij.

thous

## Of the warre of the

thousand souldiers, who would suffer nothing to be done in counsell, wythout his consent. The which thing whē Totilas understode, he planted hys siege not farre from the Citie. Howe it he assaulted it not, but sate still in quiet. In the meane while he sent part of hys armye abroad, and recovered Cume with certayne other townes in those borders, by the whiche he gate a greate masse of money. Besides this there happened certaine noble home of Rome to be taken in those places.

An example  
of clementie  
and magna-  
nimitie.

All the which Totilas caused to be verye courteouslye entreated wythoute restraint of their libertie, and sent the home agayne to their husbandes and parentes wyth an honorable company to saufconduit the. And forasmuche as in those borders was not anye Cap- tayne or anye power to withstande the doynges of Totilas, he sent este one parte of hys armye and este another, so longe vntyll he had broughte vnder hys obeylans Appulia, Lucanie, and Calabze

Calabre wyth all theyr towneſ. By  
 meanes whereof it came to paſſe, that  
 there was not any more monye paid  
 oute of thoſe countreyes to Juſtinians  
 Captaynes and ſouldiers, nor any man  
 that would obey the Captaynes, or ſet  
 one foote oute of doores to goe wyth  
 theym, For the ſouldyers luryng  
 wythin the walled towneſ robbed and  
 pyllled as well theyr frendes as theyr  
 foes, and throughte theyr extortion e-  
 uyll rule made hauocke of al thynges.  
 And the Captaynes for the ſame cauſe  
 keepng themſelues wythin þ walles,  
 dyd no more but onely defende the  
 towneſ from the enemye. For they  
 parted the Cytyes amonge theym, ſo  
 that John had the charge of Rome,  
 Belas the charge of Spole, Cypre-  
 an the charge of Peruſia, Juſtine the  
 rule of Florens, and Conſtantian the  
 keepnge of Raucima. In the meane  
 tyme Naples began to be euerye daye  
 in worſe caſe then other, by meanes  
 of the Rege. For Totilas hauing ſent  
 D.ij. for

See what  
 want of good  
 gouernement  
 doth in war.



**O**f the warre of the  
fo: hys flete had kepte them so short,  
that nothing coulde be conueyed in nei-  
ther by water no: by land. Whereby  
it was to be perceyued, that vnles  
some bodye rescowd it, that Cytie  
was lyke at length to come in sub-  
jection to the enemye.

The .vi. Chapter.

A newe Lieutenante is sent towarde Italy  
whose cowardnesse in protracting of the  
time doth not a litle endamage the imperi-  
alls. Demetrius deniseth prudently for the  
rescowing of Naples, which for want of  
courage in executinge the same tourneth  
to his owne destruction.

A newe lieue-  
tenant sent  
into italy.

**I**ustinian hearinge of thys, and  
beyng disquieted fo: the mis-  
erable estate of Italye and the  
dishonour of the Emperre, sent one  
Marinus (receptuer of hys reue-  
nues) into Italye, to amende and  
repayre thynges amisse, geuyng  
hym a nauye of shippes and an  
armie

## Gothes in Italy 108

armye of Thracians and Armenians. Captayne of the Thracians was Herodian, and Captayne of the Armenians was Phases. Besydes these, he had also in hys shippes no smalle number of the Hunnes. Marinius departynge from Constantinople, came into Epyre. There in deliberatynge vppon the affayres of Italye, hangynge in doubte betwene hope and feare, throughte his fowthfullnesse and cowardyse, he lost the tyme. For thys Marimine was a good gentyllman, of a mylde nature, meete for matters of peace, but altogether unskyllfull of warre, lyke employes, and therefore fearfull, syndynge delays and easynge doubttes in euery trifle. Now thaffaires of Italye at y time, required quicke speede both in consultinge and in workinge. Iustinian sawe so smal hope of any good doynge in Marimine, he sent one Demetrius (because that lately before he had serued vnder Belisarius in

The cowardnes of Marimius.

D.iiij.

the

## Of the warre of the

the warres in Italy wyth another name into Sicill. This Demetrius when he was arryued in Sicill, hearyng of the syege of Naples, and of the distresse that they were putte vnto that were within, determined to succour them, and that wythoute further delaye. Now for as muche as he thought hymselfe not able to dooe it by playne force, bycause that neyther hys shippes nor hys army were sufficient ther vnto, he deuysed thys pollicye. He gate togyther all the shippes that he coulde comye by in Sicill, and made of them a greate flete as to the sholme, the whiche he fraughted wyth corne, and so made sayle towarde Naples. Thys thyng dyd bothe greatlye comforte the besyeged, and also putte the Gothes in greate feare. For they had heard saye he was commyng wyth a greate number of shippes, and they thoughte herebye he hadde broughte a greate power of men wth them. And surely yf he had gonne directly

The prudent  
pollicie of de  
metrius yf he  
had followed  
it.

dyrectlye vnto Naples at the fyrst, all  
thynges had happened to good successe  
and the besyged Cytye had oute of all  
doubte bene saued, For bys enemies  
were so dysmayed at the multitude of  
bys shippes that they durste not haue  
made anye countenaunce of resistens,  
Wholbeit he knowyng his own weak-  
nesse, durste not arryue at Naples,  
but went to Rome, to thentent there  
to furnyshe bys nauye wyth men, and  
so to sayle stronglye vnto Naples.

But the souldiers that were at Rome  
woulde not take shippynge for hynt.  
For by reason they had bene banquis-  
shed by the Gothes in twoo foughte  
battelles, they stood in feare of  
theym beyonde all measure. Weyngt  
therefore destitute of thys hope, De-  
metrius was compelled to go against  
bys enemies wyth those shippes one-  
lye, that he broughte wyth hym from  
Constantinople. Lotilas kepte con-  
tinuallye readye furnysshed certayne  
swyfte Bynnesses in the haven of

Occasion let  
shyppe wilnot  
be cawght  
againc.

D.b

Naples



## Of the warre of the

Naples, and alwayes tooke diligent heede to the flete of Demetrius, wherefore when he heard that Demetrius was sette oute of Rome toward Naples, and that he was arrived at the nerte shore, sodaynely he sette vpon hym wpth his Wyndesses thowthe the whyche sodayne vnloked for assaulte, the shypmen and souldyers were stryken in suche a feare, that they tooke theym to flyghte.

The Gothes purselwinge them wpth theyr swifte Wyndesses, made a great slaughter and tooke all Demetrius shippes with theyr freight and men, For none escaped of that flete excepte it were suche as at the beginning had leapt into botes & hidden themselves, among whom was Demetrius Captaine of the said flete;

### The.vii. Chapter.

Demetrius saylinge agayne to the rescue of Naples is taken prysoner, where-

## Gothes in Italy. 110.

wherevpon Naples is yeldd to Totilas who behaueth hymselfe verye courteous-lye and frendlye both to the towne smen and to the Emperours souldyers, but towarde his owne men extendeth much seueritie in keping warlike discipline.

**A**FTER this Marimine sayled oute of Cypre into Sicill wth a greater nauye, and a greater furniture of men. And when he was arriued at Syracuse, through hys accustomed cowardyse in delayinge and bytuing of, he losse the time againe. Neyther regarding the necessitie, nor the intreataimce of suche as were besyged. At the lengthe when Iustinian had sente straighte charge vnto hym, not wthoute threates, that he shoulde proceede, yet coulde not all that cause hym to sayle agaynst hys enemyes, but he deliuered the charge of hys fleete to Demetrius Herodian and Phases, and he himselfe abode still in Sicill.

A cowardly  
carpet  
knyght.

At

## Of the warre of the

It was now the dead of the wynter  
when they beganne to sette forth.

A tempest.

Demetrius is  
taken priso-  
ner.

And when they came wythin a litle  
of Naples sodaynely the flete was ta-  
ken wyth a behemint tempest, in so  
muche that neyther oves nor anye con-  
nyng in the world could save theym  
but that they were dryuen a land per-  
force vppon the shoze where their ene-  
mies were encamped. The Gothes  
percepyng that, ranne thither and  
wythoute anye ado took the shippes  
If any made resistens they slew them,  
the rest they took prisoners. Of the  
whych number Demetrius was one.  
Whom Totilas commaunded to be  
broughte fettered in chaines vnto the  
walles of Naples, where callinge  
Conon Captayne of the Towne and  
the souldyers wyth the Cyprians of  
Naples, Demetrius by the kynges  
commaundement made an oration,  
perswadyng theym not to looke for  
anye more helpe. For consyderyng  
that those twoo fletes wyth all theyr  
men

## Gothes in Italy

1011

men and furniture were losse; there  
remayned not anye hope for theym to  
truste vnto. They that were besye-  
ged beyng soze pyned wyth hunger,  
when they sawe Demetrius taken  
and all hope of comforte cutte of, fell  
to weepynge and lamentation, not  
knowynge what to doe or which waye  
to tourne theym in so muche that all  
the Cytie was in a wonderfull trou-  
ble and disquietnesse for feare. When  
Totilas perceiued that, he called them  
and spake vnto theym as they stood  
vpon the walles in this wyse: Ye  
men of Naples, we haue not goone  
aboute to besyge your Cytie, for  
anye anger or dyspleasure that we  
beare agaynst you, but to the intent  
that by settinge you free from the bon-  
dage of oure enemye, we myght re-  
compence you for the troubles that  
you haue suffered in the tyme of these  
warres at oure enemies handes, for  
keepynge your allegrans to the Go-  
thes. For you onelye of all the Ita-  
lians



## Of the warre of the

Italians vtterlye againste your wills  
came in subiection of oure enemyes,  
compelled therto by violence & slaugh-  
ter, and well nye by the vtter destruc-  
tion of your Cytie. And therefore  
me thynkes I am ashamed that we  
haue besyged you; but that ne-  
cessitye constrayned vs because oure  
enemyes were amongst you. Where-  
fore assure your selues, rather of  
a good tourne and of frendshyppe at  
oure hand then of anye punishment.  
Moreouer for your sakes we wyll not  
be anye thyng straghte laced toward  
oure enemyes that are in the Towne  
wth you. For yf so be it they wyll  
render it vpp, they shall haue fre  
libertye and leaue to chose, whether  
they wyll serue vs in oure warres  
in lyke estate and case as other of  
oure owne souldyers, or elles de-  
parte whither they lyst themselves  
wth bagge and baggage. Whys  
oure promyse we are contented to  
conferme wth an othe. Bothe the  
Peaple

## Gothes in Italy 112

Neapolitanes and the Emperours  
 Souldiers commended Totilas bys  
 wordes . Neuerthelesse to thentent  
 they yeldynge myghte seme the more  
 bonnest and reasonable , they desy-  
 red a Truce for thyrtye dayes, yf per-  
 chaunce anye bodye woulde rescowe  
 theym wythin that tyme . Totilas  
 answered that he was contented to  
 geue theym not thyrtye , by thysse  
 thyrtye dayes respyte . The besye-  
 ged wonderynge at so greate libertye,  
 and playnely percepyng that there  
 was no hope of helpe , wythin fewe  
 dayes after sette open they gates,  
 and receyued Totilas and bys armye  
 into the Towne . When he was  
 comyn into Naples , he entreated  
 not anye man otherwysse then well  
 neyther was he greuous to anye per-  
 sonne . but rather vsed suche huma-  
 nitie and courtesye as would not haue  
 bene thoughte, to haue bene in a bar-  
 barous Gothe.

Naples is yel-  
 ded to toti-  
 las.

the curteous  
 and frendlye  
 behaviour of  
 Totilas  
 toward the  
 neapolitanes.

## Of the warre of the

For where as manye through hunger were broughte so bare and so weake, that they were not able to totre on their legges, and were fallen sycke, to the entent they should not cast theym selves alwaye wyth overlayinge their stomackes by sedyng to greadely, he looked carefullye and diligentlie vnto theym, that not onely the Citizens of Naples. But also the souldyers had euerye daye stowle, a small pyttans allowed theym by wayghte, streyghtely obseruyng that they shoulde not haue more anye where elles and that euerye daye by lyttle and lyttle theyr meales shoulde be increased. To Conon and the men of warre whych were mynded to depart, he appoynted shippes to conuey them. And where as by meanes of contrarye wyndes they coulde not departe wythin the daye limited vnto theym, yet not wyth standyng he gaue them free libertye. And furthermore  
wher

## Gothes in Italy. 113.

When as the wynde continued still a-  
 gaynst them, and that they determined  
 to go alway byland, he lent them horses  
 and beasts for their carriages, allowing  
 them moreouer victualls and money to  
 spend by the waye, and also sente of the  
 Gothes with them to saucondrupt the  
 Thus Totilas vsed gentlenesse to-  
 ward straungers, but among hys owne  
 men he kepte so streight order, that he  
 suffered no offence to scape unpunished  
 the punishment of stealers, quarrel-  
 lers, & rauishers of women was death;  
 and the forfeityng of all their goodes, to  
 the vse of them agaynst whom the dys-  
 pleasure was done. By meanes wher-  
 of wheresoeuer the Gothes encamped,  
 or passed in and out throught any of the  
 Cityes or countries that were in leage  
 with them, there was no harme done  
 to any of them. But the case stode farre  
 other wyse in those daies with the Cap-  
 taines of Iustinian. For the Captaines  
 themselves could not hold their hands  
 from doing wrong, and the souldyers  
 D. J. through

The seueritie  
 of Totilas to-  
 ward male-  
 factours.

Licentious li-  
 berry pernici-  
 ous to men of  
 warre.



## Of the warre of the

thorough their such ensample fallen to  
all kynde of licentiousnesse, absti-  
ned from nothing that was euill. Yet  
ther was there any thyng more mys-  
erable in those dayes, then the people  
of Italy that were vnder themppze,  
heynge wythoute theyr walles spoy-  
led by the enemye, and wythin their  
walles by theyr owne men of warre.  
For the Captaynes hauyng taken the  
strong holdes so; theyr owne safegard,  
passed not what became of the poore  
commons. Throughte thys inu-  
rious dealing, despayre so increa-  
sed daye by daye more and more, that  
the Emperoure was fayne to deter-  
myne wyth hymselfe to sende Belis-  
arius thither agayne. For all the  
other Captaynes were so farre from  
recoveryng that whych was losse, that  
it was not lyke they shoulde any long  
tyme be able to kepe that whiche they  
had.

The

The.vii).Chapter.

Belisarius being sente againe into Italy, in  
hys waye doth rescowe Hydrunt besieged  
by the Gothes. the myserable estate of I-  
taly at that tyme, Totilas receaueth Tibur  
and besiegeth Auximum, Vitalis is for-  
saken of hys owne souldiers. Belisari-  
us sendeth succour to Auximum, and re-  
payreth Pysanum Totilas besiegeth Alca-  
lum and Firmum.

**F**OR these considerations Belisari-  
us was chosen agayne to take the  
charge of the warres in Italy: and  
yet the warres were scarcely finished  
the whyche all this incane tyme he had  
made agaynst the Godes. Therefore  
when he sawe there was no remedye  
but to muster newe souldiers, (for he  
had leste hys olde armye at the ryuer  
Cuphates,) he went about al Thace,  
where throughe hys lyberall spendyng  
he gathered to the number of foure  
thousands withoute commission, the

Belisarius  
diligence in  
chosyng of  
hys souldiers

P.ij. whiche

## Of the warre of the

whiche he embarked spedely, and taking with hym bitalles the Lieuten-  
nant of Illicum whiche came newly  
to hym oute of Italy, sayled forwarde, &  
haupng cut ouer the Ionian sea, arri-  
ued at Salons. In the tyme of thys  
iourney, he rayled a siege aboute Hi-  
drunt a Towne of Calabze. For they  
that were besieged being compelled  
thereto by the Gothes for want of bita-  
alls, had compounded to yelde by the  
towne by a certayne daye, if they were  
not rescowed in y meane time. Where-  
of Belisarius haupng knowledge, com-  
maunded Valentine to sayle thither, &  
to cary with hym corne & other necessa-  
ryes, and to bypng alwaye the souldyers  
that had bene long besieged there, put-  
tyng newe in their romes. Thys was  
an easy matter to bypng to effeete. For  
the Gothes after the truce taken, looked  
but slyghtly to them, not so muche as  
mistrusting that any body would come  
to succo; them. By meanes wherof  
when

the rescowig  
of Hidrunte  
now called  
Otranto.

In greatest  
calme for a  
storme  
prouide.

## Gothes in Italy. 115

When the flete came sodaynly vpon the  
 vnlooked for, they trembled for feare &  
 were fayne to breake vp their siege and  
 get them further of. Valentyne ente-  
 ring into the towne, toke the olde soul-  
 diers out of the holde, and placed newe  
 in their steades, leauyng them victu-  
 als for a whole yeare. The which done  
 he returned with those shippes that he  
 brought with hym, vnto the coast of the  
 flete at Salons. After hys returne Be-  
 lifarius sayled to Rome, where hauyng  
 taried a while to practyse hys yong sol-  
 diours that he had mustered in France  
 at length with hys whole nauye he say-  
 led to Nauenna. At hys commyng thi-  
 ther, he founde all thyngs in worse case  
 through Italy the he thought they had  
 bene. For hys enemyes seemed to haue  
 the better end of the staffe euery where,  
 and to stand in besse hope and possibili-  
 ty. Contrarywise hys frendes and ad-  
 uocantes were euerywhere through  
 all Italy discouraged and broughte in  
 despair. The cities and people of the  
 country

Belisarius ar-  
 riuall in Italy.

The misery of  
 Italy through  
 misgouerne-  
 ment,



## Of the warre of the

country because they were pilled & molested by the men of warre, & the men of warre because the emperor was behind hand w<sup>th</sup> their wages for a long tyme & payed none, became stubborn and forward, refusing either to be ruled by the captaines, or to set one fote out of doore to the warres. And to say the truth they were brought to a very smal number. As for the coming of Belisarius, it was rather encrease their despair then any whit comfort them. For albe it he were a notable captaine, & out of all doubt in those daies peerlesse, yet & in December Master of Chivalrie, yet notwithstanding standing forasmuch as he brought but a slender company with him (for he had but four thousand & those were halfe unpurposed and fresh water soldiers) and had no money to deale amongst them, when he preached unto them as Eusebius declaring the truth of his coming and exhorting them to get forth w<sup>th</sup> the warres, neither the Romans nor yet the men of warre were

A Captaine is  
able to do no  
thing with-  
out men and  
monys,

To winne of  
the world  
- on the  
- on the

were glad to heare hym speake, as gaue  
any token of comfort & good hope. In  
somuche that it repented Belisarius  
hymselfe that he was come into Italy.  
In the meane tyme thererose a Differen-  
tion betwene the towne men and the Totilas recea-  
ueth Tibur.  
souldiers of Tibur, by meanes where-  
of Totilas being called to the ayde of  
the one part receaued the whole towne.  
The Citie of Tibur is a nere neigh-  
bour unto Rome, being distant from  
thence no further then syxtene myles.  
The taking whereof was a great ex-  
poyse and noxious to the Romanes, as  
whereby they were dysappointed of all  
thynges in Latium. After this Toti-  
las hauing perfecte intelligence of the He besiegeth  
Auximum,  
commynge of Belisarius, wente with  
hys armye into the countrey of the Pi-  
centes, and encamped aboute Auxi-  
mum. The very same season had Be-  
lisarius sent Vitalis with a conuenient  
crewe of Illirians into the countrey a-  
boute Bononie.

the vnsayth-  
fulnesse of the  
Illirian souldi-  
ers towards  
their captain;  
P. 117 After

## Of the warre of the

After the tyme he had wonne a certain  
towne thereabouts, and had bene re-  
created into Hononis, the Illirians  
without any cause why or wherefore for-  
soke hym, and assembling themselves  
together went their wayes home. For  
whiche dede they afterwarde alledged  
this excuse vnto the emperor, that whi-  
les they wer serving him in his warres  
in Italy, the Collectors of his tributes,  
did sel their byuelond in their Countrie,  
and raffe their wiues and children out  
of house and home, by meanes wherof  
they were compelled to retorne thither  
to defend their shone. When Theodas  
heard of this sodayne departure of the  
Illirians he sente out an army of Go-  
thes, in hope to haue take Vitales and  
the reast of his compagne fardle. But  
they preuenting hym, had receiued  
vnto Rauenna. Belisarius knowing  
that they which were besieged at Au-  
rimum were sore oppressed, sent to their  
ayde a thousand horsemen ouer whom  
he made three Captaynes Teremunt,  
Mecilas,

## Gothes in Italy.

117.

Attilas, and Sabinian, whose entering into the towne priuely by nyghte, the next daye following made a shyppme with the Gothes, by whos Attilas one of the Captaines was named. The reault within a fewer dayes after determined to departe. For they sawe that by theye taryng there, they dyd but helpe to spend their frendes victualls and necessities, and coulde do their enemies no harme. Whereupon stealyng out of the towne by nyghte, when they had gone aboute thre myles on their waye, they fell into an ambushe of their enemies. by whom beinge set on all sydes and so put to flight, they losse two hundred of their compaigne together with their apparell, armour, and all other stuffe & the beastes that caried them. The residue after long and weary trauell recovered vnto Arimin. Pantum & Dyfancum are Cities standing vppon the coaste of that Adriaticke sea, and are situate betwene Aquinum and Arimine. These towne at the beginning of these

P. b.

warres



Belisarius re-  
paired Disau-  
rum & man-  
deth it nowe  
called Pezaro

**O**f the warre of the  
warres, had Ulitigis set on fyre, & bea-  
ten down the walles of them mydway  
to the grounde. Of these two Belisari-  
us determined to repayre Disaurum,  
and to place a Troope of horsemen in  
the same, for the accomplishment where-  
of, he sent worke men thither secretly,  
to take iuste measure of the gates, the  
whiche he caused to be framed at Ra-  
uerma with lockes, hinges, barres, and  
all other yron worke belonging unto  
them, and caused them to be conueyed  
by water to Disaurum, wrytyng to the  
Captaynes and horsemen of Arimine,  
that they should sodaynly take & take  
and hange by the gates and mende by  
the walles of rough worke, and cleve  
the dyches. As for all hynde of wynde he  
provided that it was sent them by sea.  
The horsemen of Arimine therefore  
when they had taken Disaurum, did all  
thynges accordyng to Belisarius com-  
maundement. Asyllas perceauyng  
that, went thither with a great power  
to interrupte them of their worke.

But

## Gothes in Italy. 118.

But the souldiers had so busily bestowed  
 them in scowring the dykes, in casting  
 of the trenches, in making of Ram-  
 pyres, in fortifying the towne, and in  
 repaying the walles & the bulwarkes,  
 that the kyng wondered to see so many  
 thynges so swiftly devised and politici-  
 quely brought to passe in so few daies  
 And therefore whē he had taried a while  
 there aboutes, so much as he saw he  
 could do no good, he returned into hys  
 campe before Aurimū, neuer & neerer  
 of hys purpose. Whobeyt Totilas & the  
 Gothes perceauyng that Belisarius  
 shewed not hymselfe abroad in the o-  
 pen fieldes with the myperours armye  
 in no parte of Italy, but only kept him-  
 self within the walled towne and de-  
 fended them, they determined not to  
 set altogether aboute Aurimū onely  
 but to make warre agaynst other Ci-  
 tyes also. Hereupon Totilas went  
 with an armye and besieged Asculum  
 and Firmum among the Picentes.

Belisarius

Totilas besie-  
 geth Asculum  
 and Firmum.

## Of the warre of the

Belisarius being not able to rescoue  
such as were besieged that called vpon  
hym dayly for helpe, (for he had not so  
great a power that he durst venture a  
browde agaynst þe Gothes) was in great  
perplexitie, and toke it very greuously  
that hys name should be so dishonored.  
At the length he sent John Italian to  
The Emperour to enforme hym of the  
state of Italy, by whō he addrested his  
letters also, the tenor wherof contained  
thys in effeate.

### The ix. Chahter.

The Copie of Belisarius letters to the Em-  
perour the good successe of Totilas, the vali-  
ant Demeanor of Suiside the trayterous  
murdering of Ciprian and the manlinesse  
of hys souldiers.

Belisarius let-  
ters to them-  
perour

**M**ost noble and puissant Em-  
perour your Maiestie hath sent  
me into Italy slenderly furny-  
shed of men, horses, and monye, the  
which thing I declared vnto you before  
my

## Gothes in Italy.

119

my departure beseeching your highnesse  
to haue redressed the matter. In the  
which suite albeit I could not preuaile:  
yet notwithstanding it was my dutye  
to be obediēt to your commaundement.  
Whereby I was constrained to come  
forth with a fewe Thracians and Illi-  
rians, the same being freishwater soul-  
diers and altogether vnskillfull of the  
warres, not knowing so much as howe  
to holde their weapons in their hands.  
And as for the olde souldiers that I  
found in Italy, by reason they had bene  
banquished in diuerse battells beefore  
by the Gothes, they are so afrayed of  
them, that they dare scarce once loke  
vpon them. Besydes this, soasmuch  
as they haue bene long time defrauded  
of their wages, they are not able to fur-  
nyshe themselves agayne with horse  
and armour losse and broken in the for-  
mer warres, neyther will they consent  
to goe forth with them. And yet to saye  
the truth, there is not so greate a num-  
ber of them, that they can encounter a  
gainst



**O**f the warre of the  
gaynst the power of the enemye, with-  
out their owne manifeste perill and  
daunger. For the greater part of them  
that were wonte to fyghte vnder your  
hyghnesse banner in Italy, prouoked  
by the aforesayd dyspleasures, haue of  
their owne accorde reuolted to your e-  
nemye. Furthermore you may not ac-  
counte hereafter, that you are lyke to  
haue any reuenues here, toward the  
payment of your souldiers, considering  
that the enemy hath recovered þe grea-  
ter parte of Italy, & that which remay-  
neth is so empouerished and afflicted by  
þe warres, that it is not by any meanes  
able to yelde you tributes. Wherefore  
if the presence of Belisarius be suffici-  
ent to recouer Italy, you haue done  
as much as may be done in that behalfe  
for I am here in Italy. But if you pur-  
pose to ouercome your enemies in dede  
your Maiestye must make other pro-  
uision. For a Captayne (be he neuer so  
valiante, pollitique and fortunate,) is  
able to dooe nothing, if he haue not  
wher:

## Gothes in Italy.

120

wherwith to accomplishe his deuises.  
And therefore it is requisite that you  
send me hyther an armye of anye own  
practised souldiers, together with a  
greate multitude of the Hunnes and  
other Barbarous people. Moreover  
you must of necessitie prouide that we  
may haue alwayes stooze of monye.  
for without that, there is no good to be  
done in warres. Thus much dyd Be-  
lisarius write to the emperoure at that  
tyme. John going to Iustinian with  
these instructions, and haupng tarped  
there a certayne tyme, had a very slowe  
& could sate for he could bring nothing  
to effecte. In the meane while so as  
much as no man rescolued Asculum &  
Firnā y were besieged by Totilas, he  
toke the by composition. From thence  
he departed out of the Pententes in-  
to Umbria and besieged Assenn and  
Spolet. Captayne of Spolet was  
Herodian and Captayne of Assenn  
was Willfride. Herodian although  
his piece were stronge and defensible,  
yet

The successe  
of Totilas.

## Of the warre of the

The valiant &  
faithfull de-  
meanor of Si-  
sifride.

The trayte-  
rous murthe-  
ring of Cipri-  
an & the ma-  
fulnesse of his  
souldiers.

yet notwithstanding he took truce for  
a few daies. within the which because  
no rescue came, yeldyng the towne and  
the hold at the day appointed, he him-  
self with his souldiers revolted to To-  
tilas. But Sissifride behaved hymselfe  
more valiantlyc : for albeit his piece  
were nothyng so strong as the others,  
yet coulde he neuer abyde to here any  
woorde of composition, but lyke a stout  
warrior, issued oute valiantly diuerse  
tymes vpon the Gothes, and foughte  
sundrye skirmishes wth them to his  
great prayse and commendation. How-  
beit at the length fighting manfully he  
was slayne by his enemyes. The Citi-  
zens of Assis being destitute of the  
helpe of that worthy Captayne, within  
fewe dayes after yelded themselues &  
their towne vnto Totilas. Fro thence  
Totilas led his armye against Perusi-  
um. Captayne therof was Ciprian of  
whom mention is made before among  
the Captaynes of Iustinian. Totilas  
perceauyng y he could not wyne him,  
neyther

neither by faire meanes nor by foule,  
corrupted one of his esquires called  
Alarius for a piece of money, by whose  
falsehood and treacherie he kyled him.  
Nevertheless after the death of Cyprian,  
the souldiers punished the treason  
vpon Alarius head, and manfully de-  
fended the Citie still.

## ¶ The .x. Chapter.

¶ Totilas beseegeth Rome and Belisarius pre-  
pareth to rescoue the same. The misfor-  
tune of thimperialls at Portua, Pelagius a  
Decon of Rome goeth to Totilas to en-  
treat for his Citizens & cannot be heard.

**T**otilas therefore minding not to  
linger about it any longer, brake  
vp his siege there, & made toward  
Rome. When he came thither, he  
planted his siege aboute the same in  
places conuenient, but yet he trou-  
bled not the husbandmen. For all the  
tyme of thys warrs he neuer suffered  
anye of the Plimen and husbandmen

Totilas besee-  
geth Rome,



## Of the warre of the

to be hurte or hyndred by hys men of  
war. There was in garrison at Rome  
Bellas one of the Emperours Cap-  
taynes, & Conon whiche not long be-  
fores had bene Captayne of Naples.  
Also Belisarius had sent thither, Ac-  
tasyras a Persian, and Barbation a  
Thracian with a conuenient number  
of souldyers, to looke to the saufe ke-  
pinge of the Citie with the other Cap-  
taynes. The Gothes beinge thus set-  
tled aboute Rome, Actasyras & Bar-  
bation yssued oute wyth theyr retinue  
and foughte wyth them. At the fyrste  
they putte theym to flyghte, but tho-  
rowe followynge the chace to farre,  
they were at length intrapped by their  
enemyes, and wyth the losse of the  
more parte of theyr men hardlye and  
narrowlye escaped themselves into  
the Citie. From that tyme forward  
hope daylye decayinge, fyrste came  
dearth and afterwarde famine amonge  
theym. For nothyng could be con-  
ueyed into theym by lande, by reason  
the

## Gothes in Italy

122

the Gothes had besette theym rounde  
aboute. . . no: yet by water forasmuche  
as the nauys that Totilas had of late  
buylded at Naples, and then sente  
abroade, so scoured the seas that no  
shyppe of burden coulde passe for  
theym. Besydes thys the verye  
same tyme arose wythin the Cytie  
of Rome greate presumptions of  
treason. For the whyche Cethegus  
chefe President of the Senate of  
Rome, beyng bannished the Cy-  
tie fledde to Centumelles. While  
these thynges were a dooyng at  
Rome, another armye of the Go-  
thes by the commaundemente of  
Totilas besyged Pleasans. The  
same is a greate Cytie by the Ty-  
ber R. , and all onelye of the Cy-  
ties of that Countrey, contynued  
in faythefull obedyence to the Em-  
pyre. When Belisarius behelde  
these thynges, he was verge  
sorrowefull and full of care for  
the perell of the Cytie of Rome,

Belisarius de-  
uiseth to suc-  
cour Rome.

R. ii.

in as

## Of the warre of the

in as muche as he was not able to remedy it from Rauenna where he was, because that wyth that small and slender compaignie whiche he had aboute hym, it was not for him to depart from thence, consydyng hys enemyes held all the Countries betwene hym and Rome, so that he could not goe thither by land, wherebpon he deuised to succour them another waye. For the performance whereof leauynge Iustine with a band of souldyers at Rauenna, he hymselfe wente to \* Dirrachium in Dalmatia, entendinge there to assaye the commynge of a new armie from the Emperour. In the meane tyme Rome was straghtly besyeged in suche sorte that all thynges were worse and worse, and lyke to fall to better decaye and ruine. Valentine and Phocas beyng sent before by Belisarius, helde the Towne of Portua, and from thence dyd greatlge moleste and endamage the enemye wyth continuall robes almoste daye by daye. After

Now called  
Durazo.

After they had doone thus a certayne  
space wpth good successe, and by mea-  
nes thereof greatlve relined them that  
were besyged, at length fallinge into the euill for-  
an ambushe and beyng encircled of tune of the  
their enemyes they were slayne, and imperiales.  
but a verve fewe of theyr souldyers es-  
caped, the whyche had muche a doe to  
recouer the towne of Portua. Thys  
slaughter of the Captaynes and the  
souldyers drew wpth it a greater dis- One mischief  
commoditie, for it was the losse of a in anothers.  
greate deale of corne by suche a mea- necke.  
nes Vigilius the Bysshoppe of Rome  
lyvinge at that tyme in Sicill, hea-  
ryng that the people of Rome were  
soze afflicted wpth fampne, had shyp-  
ped a greate deale of Corne and sent  
it towarde Rome. The Gothes ha-  
uyng knowledge thereof, when the  
shyppes approached conveyed themsel-  
ues befoze into the haven, and hiding  
them behynde the Towres and buyl-  
dynges laye readye for theym in Am-  
bushe. The souldyers that were with



## Of the warre of the

in the towne for as muche as lately be-  
fore they had losse they Captaynes,  
and their companions for the moste  
parte were slayne, they beyng so  
fewe left, durste not adventure out  
against their enemyes, but as well  
as they coude from the walles and  
bulwarkes wyth shakynge they gar-  
mentes, wyth wagginge their handes  
and wyth cryng oute a londe to them  
made tokens to the shypmen that  
there was treason in the haven, war-  
nyng them to beware and not to ar-  
rive there. But the shypmen (as  
they that had not heard anye thyng of  
the vnfortunate battell and the losse of  
the Captaynes) toke these sygnes and  
tokens that were made, as signes and  
tokens of gladnesse and encourage-  
ment to come with more speede. Where-  
upon making the more haste, wyth  
a frethe gale of winde they entered into  
the haven. Where they were all taken  
by the Gothes breakynge oute of the  
ambushe, to the greate discomfort

and

and dispayre of the people of Rome,  
whiche hange wholly vpon the one  
lye hope of that corne. In so much  
that now the Towne was oppressed  
wth intolerable famayne. And the  
Gothes therevpon pleased the more  
boldly vpon them. There was at the  
same tyme in Rome a certayne Dea-  
con called Pelagius, who in this dis-  
tresse of famine, had shewed very ma-  
ny & notable workes of mercye vpon  
the people of Rome, by laying out his  
monye & relieving the want and need-  
nesse of euery man. For the whiche  
almost dedes (whereas his name was  
greatly renowned in times past, nowe  
it was farre more renowned then be-  
fore, The romains came vnto this mā  
humbly beseeching him y<sup>e</sup> for the safe-  
gard of the people of Rome, he would  
vouchsafe to go of Ambassade to Toti-  
las and entreate him to graunt them a  
truce for a fewe daies within the whi-  
che onlesse reserue came, the Cytie  
should be geuen vpps vnto hym.

Alty.

Pelagius

An example  
of employing  
spirituall  
goods.

Prosperitie  
maketh men  
forget them-  
selues.

**Of the warre of the**  
Pelagius forasmuch as he sawe there  
was none other remedye, obeyed the  
peoples request, and wyth hys instruc-  
tions went to Totilas into his campe.  
Totilas coniecturing the effecte of  
hys errand (for he had learned by the  
rennegates the vtter necessitie and dis-  
tresse that the besieged were brought  
vnto) entertayned Pelagius verye ho-  
nourably at hys commynge. Howbeit  
befoze he had begonne to declare hys  
message, he hymselfe pzeuentynge him,  
wyth a longe and bytter oration, in-  
ueighed against the Romaynes, calling  
them in the teth wyth the benefites of  
Theoderich and the Gothes towarde  
them, and reprovynge theym of theyr  
vntrouthe towarde the Gothes. In  
thend he concluded that there was no  
waie eyther of communication or com-  
position, onles they would beat downe  
their walles, and wholly submit them-  
selues & al that they had bodies & goods  
to the will and discretion of the Gothes  
to be dealte withall in suche wyse as  
should

## Gothes in Italy. 125.

should please the conquerours. Belas-  
 gius hearing him talke so bytterly and  
 disdainefully and thynkinge in hym-  
 selfe that it booteth not to stand in con-  
 tention wyth hym, sayde thus vnto  
 him. Forasmuch as thou Totilas hast  
 not vouchesaue to here an Ambassa-  
 dour tell hys message, but by pzeuen-  
 tyng he hath abidged hym of the  
 lybertie of speaking, we will flye vn-  
 to God who of hys Justice is wont to  
 abate the courages of men, when they  
 grow ouer proude and statelie. When  
 he had sayde those wordes, he retur-  
 ned by and by into the Cytie. The  
 Romaynes seynge hym come agayne  
 wythoute speding of hys purpose, were  
 in suche an agonie that they wyll not  
 what to doe nor whyche way to turne  
 them. For on the oneside they were af-  
 flicted w<sup>th</sup> intolerable famine, and on  
 thother side stood befoze their eyes the  
 outrageous cruelty of Totilas & of the  
 gothes, whose most cruel hands rather  
 then they would fall into, they fullie

God the re-  
 fuge in ex-  
 tremities.

A. B.

deter:



**Of the warre of the**  
determined to starue themselves for hun-  
ger. By meanes whereof the people of  
Rome suffered and abode such thyn-  
ges, as it is a miserie euen to reherse  
them.

**[The .xi. Chapter.]**

¶ John Vitalian commeth with a newe po-  
wer from the emperour, whervpon aduise  
is taken for the succouring of Rome, ac-  
cording to the whiche Belisarius goeth to  
Portua by water, commaunding John to  
mete him there by lande. But he through  
the prosperous successe that he hath agaiſt  
the Gothes commeth not there at all. By  
meanes whereof Belisarius is faine to de-  
uiſe another way for the succouring of the  
Citie the which by his industrie takynge  
good effect agaiſt the enemy is by the folly  
of his owne men interrupted to his owne  
great sorrowe and appairing of his health  
through rage of anger and todayne feare,  
and to the vtter preiudice of Rome. For  
Totilas anon after taketh and lacketh it  
the whyche done he maketh an oratyon  
to his souldyers.

## Gothes in Italy. 126.

**I**n the meane tyme Justinian sent John w<sup>th</sup> an armie vnto Belisarius. They were not any great number that he set forth at y<sup>e</sup> tyme, but he prepared to send a greater power oute of hand, For the whiche occasion he had sent his Chamberlaine Parces vnto y<sup>e</sup> Crulians & other barbarous nations inhabiting about the riuer of Danow, of the which some were alreadye come into Thrace. When tharmies were assembled to Dirrachisi, & that consultation was had as concerning the war, it was agreed by one consent first of all to rescow the romains. But how that might be done there was diuersitie of opinions: John perswaded to march w<sup>th</sup> all y<sup>e</sup> whole power together thorow Calabria & appulia & so to go to Rome. For if they went all in one companie they might be the better able to get the upper hand whereas if tharmie should be deuided and some should go by sea and some by lande, none of bothe partes should be able to matche the enemye.

Belisa,

the retourne  
of iohn with  
answer from  
themperour.

Debating in  
counsell for  
the rescow-  
ing of rome.

## Of the warre of the

Belisarius said he could wel allowe the same opinion, if the people of Rome stood not at such an exigent. But now considering their estate, it was needefull to make all speede y<sup>e</sup> might be. It was a long iourney to go through Calabze and Appulia, & if their enemies should mete them they might cast many letts in their way, whereas by the sea yf the wind serued, their nauie myghte win five dayes arrive in the Romaine haven, & by theyr beinge so nere at hand, putte the Romaines in certaine hope & comfort. For he had heard of thunfortunate mischaunce of his captaines, & knew of the losse of the corne that was sent out of Sicill, whereupon he considered in his minde the despaire & distresse y<sup>e</sup> the Romaines were in. This opinion was allowed in the counsell, & therupon Belisarius setting forth fro Dirrachium arrived at Byzunt. The Gothes which were besieging of that towne being stricken with feare at the presence of Belisarius, brake vp their sieg

siege and flying from his sight retired  
to Brunduse, the which is aboute two  
dayes iourney from Hidzunt. By and  
by they sent vnto Totilas aduertising  
him of Belisarius comming, beleuing  
that he would haue iourneyed by land.  
When Totilas heard that, forthwith  
he putte himselfe & his arme in a rea-  
dinesse to goe meete hym. But when  
he vnderstoode that Belisarius went  
by sea, he addrested hymselfe whollye  
to withstande hym aboute the Citie of  
Rome, inesppecially makynge proui-  
sion that nothing mighte be conueyed  
into the Citie to theym that were be-  
sieged, by the Ryuer Liber. For the  
accomplishment whereof he deuised  
this practise. He chose a place aboute  
eleuē miles of from Rome where the  
Ryuer Liber is narrowest, & there he  
layd ouer long beames from thoneside  
to thother in maner of a bydge at eche  
ende whereof he buylded a Towre of  
Limber, & drew a long yron chaine by  
the bydges side, at the endes whereof  
he



## Of the warre of the

Belisarius es-  
meth to Por-  
tua for the  
rescowing of  
Rome.

The good  
successe of  
Iohn against  
the Gothes.

Cannae.

he made two bastiles the whiche & the  
aforesaid towres he manned with soul-  
diers to defend the brydge. In þe meane  
while was Belisarius come to the Ro-  
mayne haven. And hauynge sette hys  
men a land, tarped for Iohn & tharmie  
that was with him. The Romaines  
knowynge of hys comminge, endured  
all their extremityes with better cou-  
rage vppon hope of rescowe. Iohn af-  
ter the departure of Belisarius, ha-  
uynge cut ouer the narowe seas, had in-  
uaded the Gothes looking for nothing  
lesse, and hauynge putte theym to  
flyghte, wyth greate slaughter pursu-  
wed them, & at the first assault wonne  
Bzunduse. Then hauynge reconci-  
led the people of Calabze & broughte  
them again to fauour the myperour, w<sup>th</sup>  
many faire promises made vnto the, he  
departed from Bzunduse, & after v. re-  
mouynge came to Canusiu, the which  
town he also brought in subiectiō. Not  
far from Canusiu is þe vilage of Can-  
nas, where the notable battell was  
fought

foughte betwene Hanniball and the  
 Romaines. In this place one Tullian  
 the sonne of Tlenant a man of greate  
 name & authoritie amonge þe Lucanes  
 came to John declaring to him that the  
 Lucanes & Brutians had taken parte  
 w<sup>th</sup> his enemyes not of theyr owne ac-  
 cord, but compelled by the displeasures  
 doone to theym by the Imperialles.  
 Wherfore yf the Emperour woulde  
 entreate them frendly & gently, the peo-  
 ple wold willingly retorne vnder his o-  
 bedience. John loading him w<sup>th</sup> com-  
 mendations & thanks promised hym  
 greate rewarde, & afterwarde vsed his  
 helpe to his great comoditie & further  
 aunce. At such time as Totilas hard of  
 Johns approach, he sent a crewe of his  
 hoymen to Capua, commanding the  
 to keepe themselves close w<sup>th</sup>in the  
 walles, and to make no shewe at all to  
 theyr enemyes vntyll they were past,  
 and then to followe the taylor of theyr  
 host. What was to be done afterwarde  
 he willed them to cast þe care vpon hym.

This

## Of the warre of the

This thing so greatly troubled, John, that for feare he should be entrapped by his enemies, he left of his journey toward Belisarius, & turried himselfe toward the Brutians and Lucanes. There was among the Brutians a certaine Gothe, called Richemond sette there by Totilas w<sup>th</sup> an armie to kepe y<sup>e</sup> country in obedience, & to kepe the enterance betwene Scilla & Charibdis. Him did John sodainly assaile, and at the first brunt put hym to flight, and after great slaughter receiued the rest y<sup>e</sup> were lefte togither w<sup>th</sup> their Captayne by composition. Hereupon al the Brutians & Lucanes revolted from the Gothes to the Emperour. Whiles John occupied himself in this sort, Belisarius looked daily for him & was wonderfull sorow for his long tariens, greatly blaminge Johns cowardise, that he had not foughte againste the horsemen that were at Capua, inesppecially seing that he himselfe had so notable a band of Horsemen of the Hunnes.

Other by

whereby he myghte easily haue come  
through maugre his enemies heades,  
and needed not to haue turned backe a  
gayne so shamefully. These and suche  
other thynges dyd Belisarius fynde  
faulte with. But it booted hym not to  
complayne, for John had taken vp hys  
standyng in Appulia, and there deter-  
mined to abyde, mynding nothing lesse  
then to goe to Rome. Belisarius ther-  
fore fearyng least the besieged shoulde  
thynke themselves abandoned, and  
through despaire shold chaunce to mis-  
carry, determined to succour them by h  
Tiber, for hys power was not so great  
that he was able to encounter with his  
eneuyes vppon the land: and therefore  
he trusted rather to hys pollicie and to  
the riuer for the succoryng of h towne.  
Vppon this thought he bestyde hym &  
gate two hundred of those kind of ship-  
pes which the Grekes call Dromades,  
theso shippes haue walles of timber on  
euery syde with loopes in places con-  
ueniente to let oute arrowes and other

Belisarius pro-  
uision for the  
rescowyng of  
Rome.

R. J. Weapons



## Of the warre of the

weapons at the enemye. Agaynst the  
brydge and other thynges that were set  
to stoppe hym vppon the riuer, he made  
thys deuysie: he set two shyppes vpon the  
stream fastened surely together wyth  
barres & crowes of yron, vpon the same  
he buylded a towler of tymbre some  
what hygher then the tolters that were  
buylded at the endes of the brydge by  
hys enemyes. Whē these thynges were  
in a redynesse, he caused the Dromades  
to be fraughted with corne & other suste-  
nance, to be conueyed to Rome, man-  
nyng them with the stoutest and vali-  
antest souldiers that he had. Commaun-  
dyng all the residue to goe on foote by  
the riuers syde, & to drawe the shippes  
with the tolters. With his nauie furni-  
shed & decked in thys wyse he set for-  
warde agaynst hys enemyes. He hym-  
selfe enterynge into one of the Droma-  
des sayled foremost, and the reste fol-  
lowed hym in order, hys footemen al-  
so went by hym vpon the ryner banche.

Further

Furthermoze he sente to Rome vnto  
 Belias, that he shoulde yssue out at the  
 very same tyme & kepe the enemyes as  
 much occupied as he could. But Bel-  
 las dyd neyther that nor yet any thyng  
 ells that was to any purpose during al  
 that siege. Belisarius nauie being def-  
 ked in suche sorte as I haue tolde you,  
 went by the streame. Neyther dyd the  
 Gothes mite them in any place, but  
 kepte themselves quietly wythin theyr  
 bulwarkes. When the shippes came  
 nere þe byrge there they founde a trope  
 of their enemyes and one bastile set at  
 the tone end of the chayne, the whiche  
 Belisarius souldiers wonne at þe firste  
 assault, & so takyng awaye the chayne  
 proceeded to the byrge. There began a  
 curste fraye, the Gothes endeuoryng to  
 defend the byrge, and the souldiers of  
 Belisarius to wynde it. For þe Gothes  
 yssuyng frō both þe towres at eche end  
 of þe byrge, fought very valiantly. A-  
 gayne the souldiers drayng the shyp-  
 pes harde to the byrge, dyd beate the  
 R. G. Gothes

## Of the warre of the

Gothes and woulde not suffer them to stand vpon it. In the meane while Belisarius caused the Shyppes wherin the tower of tymbre was, to be brought as nere the tower of his enemyes as could be. And when they came hard to it he commaunded the vessells of brimstone (whiche he had hanged in the toppe of hys tower so; the same purpose before) to be set on fyre, and to be caste downe vppon the towre of hys enemyes, the which being done, the fyre lighting vppon the tower of hys enemyes, burned it vp and al the Gothes that wer within it. There were not lesse then two hundred that perished in y<sup>e</sup> fyre among whom was the Captayne of the holde hymselfe, such a man of hys handes as was not among all the Gothes agayn. Hereuppon the souldiers assailling the reast of the Gothes more boldely and fierly, compelled them to geue backe, wherby they wonne y<sup>e</sup> byrge, y<sup>e</sup> which forthwith they purposed to haue heauen downe, and with their whole flete to

## Gothes in Italy.

131

to haue sayled to Rome. For there remained not now any let in their waye, but that they myghte haue gone to the Citie and haue conueyed in the corne and all other necessaryes, to the greater renoune and commendation of Belisarius, whome had deuised suche a nauie. But fortune (as it should seme) had determined other wyle. For sodainly there happened a wonderful mischaunce (not by meanes of the enemye, but by hys owne men) which peruered all hys deuises. The Gothes helde the Citie Ostia which standeth on the lefte hande of Tyber by the sea syde ouer agaynst the whiche standeth the Citie Portus on the ryght hande of the riuer. When Belisarius set forth with hys nauie, he had lefte hys wyfe and all his household furniture in the sayd towne of Portus, and had appoynted as ruler thereof one Isaac a valiant gentleman and a trusty with a conuenient Crew of souldiers, commaundynge and hartely beseeching him, that he would not for any chaunce

Man purposeth and God dysposeth.

R. 14.

02



## Of the warre of the

occasion, depart out of the towne but kepe hymselfe within it and defende it only: Now at such tyme as Belisarius had set hys enemies towne on fyre (as we haue declared before) by & by ranne certayne to the towne of Dortua, and whereas the victorie was notable of it selfe, they reported it farre greater then it was in dede. At the which tydings Isaac leapyng for ioye & exalting hymselfe in hys owne conceite, lyke a mad belem quite forgetting what Belisarius had sayd vnto hym, commaunded hys men to arme themselves, & in this sodayne heate & extasie waisting ouer hys men to inuade hys enemies that kept their standyng on the other syde of the riuer, ranne vpon them not farre from the towne of Ostia. Through his sodayne assaulte at the first encounter he put them to flight. Howbeit anon after, hys enemies gathering themselves together and encouraging one another, returned estones vpon hym & hauyng slayne a great sorte of his souldiers, to coole hys fyre madnesse, toke  
him

## Gothes in Italy. 132

hym prysoner. Immediately hereupon  
 certayne horsemen broughte worde to  
 Belisarius that his enemies had taken  
 Isaac prysoner. With þ which tydings  
 Belisarius beyng stricken to the heart,  
 demaunded not one worde of þ messen-  
 ger where o: in what sort, but miscon-  
 struing that hys enemies had taken  
 Portua, and bene lordes of hys wyfe  
 & all that euer he had, he was sodaynly  
 stricken with such an inward sorow,  
 þ he was not able to speake. And there-  
 upon turnyng backe agayne, he repyrd  
 with hys nauye & hys souldiers in all  
 haste that myght be, to the detour-  
 nyng ether to recouer þ towne whyle  
 the matter was but newly begonne, &  
 hys enemies had yet scarcely settled  
 theselues, o: els to die in þ battell. By  
 this meanes þ victorie which he had as  
 good as gottē slypped out of his handes.  
 But whē he came to Portua & sawe þ  
 towne safe & himself deceaued through  
 light credite & mistaking of þ message,  
 he toke so great sorowefo: it, þ he fell  
 sick: and was sayne to keepe hys bed

.King. and

## Of the warre of the

The worthie  
rewarde of  
wilful rashe-  
nesse.

The miserable  
estate of  
Rome.

and besydes that, he was taken with a  
sore and dangerous feuer, which held  
hym long tyme ere he coulde be ryd of  
it. Isaac the authoz of all this mischief  
was by the commaundement of Toti-  
las put to death in prison, in reuenge-  
ment of the death of Rodericke Cap-  
taine of the garrison, whiche had dyed  
of a wound taken in the foresaid battel.  
For by this tyme had Totilas quite  
chaunged that gentlenesse whiche he  
had pretended in the begynnyng of his  
reigne, into statelynesse and crueltie.  
Merely eyther bycause his prosperous  
successe made hym forget hymselfe, or  
ells because his gentlenesse beyng but  
feined at the begynning, could not con-  
tinue. I assure you he would speake so  
bitterly of the people of Rome, y the very  
terror therof was an occasion that they  
endured the famyne more obstinately  
then they would haue done, because e-  
very man was afrayed of his outrage-  
ous crueltie. Therfore as long as  
there was any hope of helpe at Belisar

and the other

## Gothes in Italy. 133.

this hand, the people of Rome beyond  
 their power & (to say the truth) beyond  
 bondes of manhode and nature, endu-  
 red the saunyn. For to omit other thyn-  
 ges, euen the fleshe of horses, asses, and  
 mules were deynthe delicates at that  
 tyme in Rome, they thoughte they had  
 sped well that coulde get either dogges  
 or myce or such other vncleane beastes  
 to fede on: Other some wer glad to eat  
 all kynde of herbes, euen suche as the  
 byrte beastes would not haue touched,  
 and diuerse lyued by rootes and barkes  
 of trees. But when they sawe there  
 was no hope of helpe, then turning to  
 teares and lamentation, some fordyd  
 themselves, and some slealyng out in  
 night attempted to deceaue the watche  
 of their enemies. Many also starued for  
 hunger and want of foode within their  
 own houses, & neuer came out of their  
 doores. While the Citty stode in this  
 lamentable and piteous estate, some  
 Italian souldiers conspired to betray

Rome is be-  
 trayed.

K.b. at



## Of the warre of the

at the gate Celimontana, commonly cal-  
led Asnaria, whose after the tyme they  
were fully resolved vpon the matter, did  
let the selues downe the wall by a lyne,  
& went straght vnto Totilas promys-  
sing to betraye the Citie into his handes.  
Totilas encouragynge them with pro-  
myse of great rewardes, sent certayne  
of his men with the to viewe the place  
to consider whyther the thyng they had  
promysed, were possible to be done or  
no. The Asaurians leadyng the to the  
walles went by agayne in their syghte  
by the same lyne that they sided downe.  
And so whē the experience of the mat-  
ter had geue sufficient credit, Totilas  
at nyght appointed to the accomplishe-  
ment of the myschiefe, commaunded his  
hoste to be readie in armour about him  
by one of the cloche after mydnyght.  
The whiche being done, he sent cer-  
tayne of his men before to get vp by the  
lyne, and he hymselfe following closely  
after with the rest of his armye, stay-  
ed a lyttle from the gate. They that  
were

## Gothes in Italy.

134.

were sente by Totilas, were according to couenante beettorne hym and the traytours, drawen by the walles, from whence they proceeded forthwith to the gate and with axes cut it open. Totilas haupng by thys meanes entered into Rome, kept hys armpe still about hym at the gate, not sufferng any of hys men to runne into the Citie, but kept them together wpth hym untill it was daye, Sodaynly there sprang a noyse aboute that parte of the towne, that the enemye was gotten within the walles, & thereupon ensued a wonderfull feare every mā begynnng to fye, Suche as fled wente out at those gates that were farthest frō the place where h enemy entered. Many also both of the nobilitie and of the commonalty toke sanctuarie in the Churches. Allone as it was daye the enemyes ranne through all the Citie, and wythout any respect slewe as many as came in their waye.

Totilas

The sackyng  
of Rome.

## Of the warre of the

Totilas marching frō Lateran where  
 he had stode al nyght, went through the  
 Citie to Saint Peters as it had bene  
 to perfoyme hys volwe, accompanied  
 with traynes of most cruell and bloudy  
 butchers, which with their naked swoy-  
 des bathed in bloud, slew all that ener  
 came in their way without regard of  
 any person. Haupng in this sorte swept  
 through the myddest of the Citie from  
 the one end to the other, when he came  
 into the Vaticanē unto the portche of  
 Saint Peters, Pelagius of whom we  
 made mention befoze, fearing to ap-  
 proche into ptesence, rauished in hys ap-  
 parell accustomed in solemne ceremo-  
 nies, and holdyng the Testamente of  
 Christ in hys hande, kneled humblye  
 downe on hys knees, & sayd: O kyng I  
 beseeche thee spare thy humble suppli-  
 antes. At that woꝛde Totilas dysdayn-  
 fully caste a proud loke vpon hym, say-  
 ing: comest thou nowe to me Pelagi-  
 us to make supplication? Pea euen  
 nowe (q̃ Pelagius) sithens it is the wil  
 of

Pelagius ma-  
 keth supplica-  
 tion for hys  
 Citizens

2.

## Gothes in Italy.

135

of God to make thee Lozde & Master o-  
uer me . And therfore my soueraine  
Lord haue mercy vpon thy seruauents.  
Therewithall þe wꝛath of Totilas was  
assuaged, insomuche that he made pro-  
clamation þe frō thenceforth there shold  
not any person be stricke with þe sword  
but that there should be respecte from  
slaughter & bloudshed . Moreouer he  
gaue cōmaundement, that no gentle-  
woman were she mayde, maryed, wife  
or wydowe, should be defyled, þe which  
he caused to be obserued with great se-  
ueritie. Onely the goodes of the Ro-  
manes he gaue for a pray to hys sould-  
diers, geuyng straght charge that no  
mā should be so bolde as to touch their  
bodys. Then myndyng to pull down  
the courages of the Gothes, puffed vp  
with pryde for thys victoꝛye, he sōmo-  
ned them together the next day & made  
this oration vnto them. Is there any of  
you my companions in armes (q̄ he)  
that beholdyng so great alterations as  
haue chaūced within these fewe yeres, warre.

The Oration  
of totilas to  
hys men of  
warre.

Dreadeth



## Of the warre of the

breadth not the frailtye of mannes estate : And is not able to coniecture whereupon and wherefore all these alterations & chaunges haue happened : I wyl not speake of Rome, somtyme the Ladye of the whole worlde, whiche now is fallen into your hands . For she hath suffered many myschaunces which were done so longe agoe that they are not nowe to be recounted, and this is not the fyrst ruine that hath happened vnto her . Wherefore I had rather put you in remembraunce of our owne assayes . What thyng was there of grater power and strength before these warres, then the nation of the Gothes throught out all Italy : It sent into the field two hundred thousande fyghtyng men ; throughtly furnished wyth armour , weapons , artillerie , horses , victualles, golde and syluer . It helde in possession all Italye, Sicill, Corsica, Sardinia, and Dalmatia. Who would haue beleued it had bene possible for  
seuen

## Gothes in Italy.

136

ten thousande Grekes (for there  
 came no mo into Italy at the first) to  
 haue subuerted so great a power: And  
 what shall we say of the same Grekes:  
 when they had in manner brought all  
 in subiection to them: and helde all as  
 Lordes and conquerers: woulde any  
 man haue thought that you being but  
 a few and brought almoste to begge-  
 ry, shoulde haue recovered Italy out  
 of the handes of them being twentye  
 thousand men, considering that at that  
 tyme ye were not able to make aboue  
 foure thousand horsemen: and had not  
 a towne left you in all Italy, moze  
 then Dauye Merou, & \* Caruissim:  
 woulde any man haue thought that e-  
 uerye shoulde haue taken Rome the  
 head of the worlde: the whiche Alitigis  
 was not able to subdue with his two  
 hundred thousand me in a whole yeres  
 besiegement: Surely countryme these  
 thynges are very great and not a litle  
 to be wondered at.

\* Now called  
Treuizo.

Howe

## Of the warrethe of

Howbeit if we like to consider & munit  
thent, the causes of these alterations  
are most manifest & apparant. For as  
long as the Gothes executed Justice &  
blessed equitye, so long their power flouri  
shed, their estate prospered, their mat  
ters went forward, & whatsoeuer they  
toke in hand had good successe. But as  
sone as they wer once led awy through  
couctousnesse, then bred there pryue  
grudge among them, the rose there in  
warde debate, then one soughte to cut  
anothers throte, then sprang bp secret  
treason, through the which they brought  
themselues to bitter ruine & decaye. A  
gayne when these contagious maladies  
were passed out of you into the captaines  
of Iustinian, through your amende  
ment you easily overcame them. Where  
fore yf you wey & consider these thyngs  
wel, ye haue no cause at al to be proude  
of this victorie, but rather oughte to  
dread God & to feare the mutabilitie of  
fortune. For ye must vnderstand that  
all Empire & power is easily forgone,  
onlesse

## Gothes in Italy 137

onlesse they be maintained by Justice  
 pollicie, and payne strange: For my  
 companions in armes, knowe ye this &  
 beleue it so, a certaintie, that the grea-  
 test parte of your labour is yet behind.  
 For it is a harder matter to kepe thin-  
 ges gotten, then to gette them, For as  
 muche as in gettinge often tymes the  
 cowardnes of the possessor furthereth  
 a man more then his owne prowesse.  
 But to kepe thynges gotten, no man  
 is able without his owne prowesse and  
 pollicie. Thus muche spake Thomas  
 at that tyme & the Gothes dyd great-  
 lye commend the wysdomis of theyr  
 kynge.

### The xiiij. Chapter.

The xiiij. worke of Thomas to the King  
 was, and that of a noble whiche  
 accused of treason. For he sent his am-  
 bassadours with letters to the Emperour  
 at whose returne he desaceh Rome and  
 leaueh it vnterly desolate.

D.J.

After



The talke of  
rotilas to the  
Romaines.

**O**f the warre of the  
**A**fter this he called the Romaines  
before him and greatly reponed  
their unthankfullnesse & misde  
meanour. In as much as they being in  
subjection vnder Moacer, & deliuered  
from his tyranny by meanes of Theodoric & the Gothes, at whose hands  
they had receiued so great benefites  
that theym selues coulde scarce haue  
supplied, though the whiche they haue  
bene greatly enriched & had lyled ma  
ny yeres in great tranquillitie, yeghe  
happye yf they coulde haue sene wher  
they were well, now in the ende with  
out any wronge or displeasure offered  
to them, had contrarie to their othe  
allegeans revolted to the Grekes, me  
of all other most haine & withoute ex  
ther manhood or prowesse. Who im  
mediatly vpon their arriuall being be  
sieged by Vitigis, durst neuer shewe  
their heedes in the open field, but hid  
king within walls and there starued  
themselues for hunger, aboode all the  
dishonour that might be. Who after

the tyme they were made lordes of the  
Citties, not through their owne man  
hoode, but through treason & deceyte,  
fylled all places wyth tollgatherers,  
Bollers, and Promoters: who wyth  
maruelous crueltie compelled the Ci  
ties & people of Italye to the payment  
of those tributes, whiche had bene for  
geuen them & clearly released manye  
yeres before by Theoderich & thother  
Kyniges of the Gothes. Who to satis  
fie the insatiable ravenousnesse of the  
Emperour their Master, called as  
well the people as the magistrates, to  
a straight account of such thynges, as  
they had taken charge of vnder the said  
kyniges. Will me therfore ye Romaynes  
(or he) whether ye euer suffered anye  
harme by the Gothische Kyniges: And  
tell me againe if euer these Brethlings  
dyd you anye good: And not rather  
more displeasure to you beyng the  
frendes, then to vs their enemies: A pi  
cious & wicked kinde of people, able to  
serue to no purpose, but to forginge of

## Of the warre of the

leasinges. & whereas on the contrary  
part the Gothes were borne & brought  
by amonge you in Italse, and yet you  
haue set more by straungers & alien  
then by your owne countryemen & ac-  
quaintance, so much as ye degenera-  
ted out of kind, hating whom ye ought  
to loue, desyring new things & lothing  
your owne quietnesse, like restie iades  
which through ouer long standinge  
& to much pampering become coltish  
& full of euil touches. Wherefore seeing  
you haue done these thinges both con-  
trarye to your dutie & allegiance, and  
contrarye to your owne profyte, look  
as you haue hitherto bene worthely  
punished, so shall you also be hereaf-  
ter. With these wordes he dismis-  
sed the Romaynes worde of all good hope.  
About the same tyme was pleaded the  
case of a noble woman called Justina-  
na. It was laid to her charge, that she  
caused images of kinge Theoderic  
to be broken & defaced in reuengement  
of her husband Boetius and of her fa-  
ther.

A noble wo-  
man accused  
for defacing  
the kynges  
ymages.

father Symmachus whom Theoderich had put to death. The endowment for defacing of y<sup>e</sup> images was supposed to be true. Howebeit she was thought to be helde excused, inasmuch as her fall so row prouoked her therunto, so because it was manifestlye manifest that those worthy personages, were wrongfully put to death. In consideration wherof, Theodorus acquitted the woman, & preserved her from the violence of the Gothes. Afterward he purposed to sende an Ambassade to Justinian. The Ambassadors were the renowned Pelagius, & one Theodore an Orator of Rome. These men by Theodorus were with a great offer to be by messengers faithfully, and to returne to him into Italye with as much speeche as mighte be. The effect of their commission was, to declare unto the Emperour that he wold admitte hym & the gothes into the number of his friends he wold saue the cite of Rome, & wold reduce it into a strong powerlike

The record  
of Theodorus  
sent to Justinian  
about the year  
520

An Ambassad  
sent from Theodorus  
to Justinian  
about the year  
520



## Of the warre of the

a faithfull friend in all his voyages and  
warres. But yf he would rather con-  
tinue warres against them, he would  
make Rome even w<sup>th</sup> the grounde.  
For he minded not to trouble himself  
w<sup>th</sup> the keeping of it w<sup>h</sup>yle he should  
be occupied aboute other warres, nor  
yet to leaue it bype to his enemies.

Furthermore he wrote a letter to Ju-  
stinian, the tenour wherof was this.  
That hath bene done aboute the  
Citty of Rome I thinke you know  
well ynough. The occasion why we  
send Ambassadors unto you is this.  
We couet to be at attournement w<sup>th</sup>  
you, and you w<sup>th</sup> us, lyke as were  
oure noble predecessours Anastasius  
the Emperour of Rome and Theode-  
rich Kinge of the Gothes. Whose mu-  
tuall conoord & agreement both cau-  
sed great tranquillitie and quietnes  
of those tymes, and also great lyfe be-  
nefited themselves. If therefore you  
can fynde in your hartes to doe as ther  
hath, I will w<sup>th</sup>holys accepte you for

The tenour  
of Totilas let-  
ter to them-  
perour.

Latin text on the left margin, partially obscured by the binding.

my parent, and you shall haue me and  
my Gothes at commaundement to  
helpe you in all your warres. But yf  
you be otherwyle mynded, you shall  
vnderstande by our Ambassadors  
what shall be the sequele. With this  
message the Ambassadors sayled in  
to Grece, darynge whose goyng and  
commynge Totilas aboode still at  
Rome. Belisarius laye all the whyle  
at Portua, broughte to deathes doore  
wyth syckenesse and sorrowe. In the  
meane tyme John persilled in hys do-  
inges, & altered many thyngs among  
the Lucanes and Brutians. By mea-  
nes whereof Totilas also was com-  
pelled to sende amonge the Lucanes  
and to renewe the warre. It was not  
long after but that he was certified of  
the Emperours answere. For at such  
tyme as the Ambassadors commynge  
before Justinian had by the deliuered  
the kynges letters, and afterwarde  
declared their Commission, makynge  
intercession and supplicatio for sauing  
the

the emperours  
answere to  
the demands  
of Totilas,

Of the warre of the  
 the Citie of Rome then standing in  
 great leoperdie, they could gette no  
 other answer at the Emperours hand  
 but that Belisarius was in Italye  
 whose will and discretion he had com-  
 mitted the affaires of that countrye  
 When Totilas heard that perceiuing  
 it was don for none other purpose then  
 to disappoynt him of his desyre, & mor-  
 over takinge displeasure at Johns do-  
 inges whiche had made warre vppon  
 him sytting still in quiet & abyding for  
 the returne of his Ambassadors sent  
 to entreate for peate, he toke counsell  
 to rase the Citie of Rome. And hereby  
 on rising vpp with maruelous crueltye  
 in sundry places he beate the walles  
 downe to the grounde, to the mounte-  
 nayce of the third part of the Circuit of  
 the whole Citie. That done he set the  
 Capitoll on fire. All was on a light  
 fire about the market, about suburbs  
 & about y<sup>e</sup> holy strete. The hill Quirinalis  
 smoked, the hill Auentine glistered  
 with flames & the noise of the fallinge  
 of the

The utter sac-  
 king and de-  
 solation of  
 Rome.

2uant.  
 : by. Thirsd.  
 the mon.  
 58

# Gothes in Italy. 141.

of the houses was heard euery where.  
While the Citie was thus burninge,  
thinhabitanes wyth their wyues and  
childzen, were thowen out of their na  
tue soyle, hauing not so much libertie  
as to bewaile their owne miseries. All  
the people and the common sort he dis  
persed throughe the towncs of Cam  
panie. But he kepte still aboute hym  
the Senatours and noble men for hos  
tages. After this he departed oute  
of Rome with all hys whole ar  
mie, leauing it vtterly disolate,

in so muche that there re  
mained not anye man  
or woman  
in it.

The

Thus endeth the thirde  
Booke.



Of the warre of the  
 the Citie of Rome then standing in  
 great leoperdie, they could gette no  
 other aunsweere at the Emperours hand  
 but that Belisarius was in Itale  
 whose will and discretion he had com-  
 mitted the affaires of that country  
 When Totilas heard that perceiuing  
 it was don for none other purpose then  
 to disappoynt him of his desyre, & mor-  
 over takinge displeasure at Johns de-  
 inges whiche had made warre vppon  
 him sytting still in quiet & abyding for  
 the returne of his Ambassadors sent  
 to entreate for peate, he toke counsell  
 to rase the Citie of Rome. Wherevpon  
 on rising vp with marvelous cruelty  
 in sundry places he beate the walles  
 downe to the grounde, to the mounte-  
 nance of the third part of the Circum-  
 the whole Citie. That done he set the  
 Capitoll on fire. All was on a lyght  
 fire about the market, about subura  
 & about y<sup>e</sup> holy strete. The hill Quirinalis  
 smoked, the hill Aventine glistered  
 with flames & the people of the falling  
 of the

The utter sac-  
 king and de-  
 solation of  
 Rome.

Quirinalis  
 by. Thunel  
 the mount  
 58

## Gothes in Italy. 141.

of the houses was heard euery where. While the Citie was thus burninge, the inhabitants w<sup>th</sup> their wyues and children, were throwen out of their native soyle, hauing not so much libertie as to bewaile their owne miseries. All the people and the common sort he dispersed throughe the towncs of Campanie. But he kep<sup>t</sup> still aboute hym the Senators and noble men for hostages. After this he departed oute of Rome with all hys whole armie, leauing it vtterly disolate,

in so muche that there remained not anye man or woman in it.

The

Thus endeth the thirde Booke.

# The fourth booke

of Leonard Aretine, concerning  
the warres in Italy  
against the Gothes.

## The first Chapter,

¶ Totilas chaseth Iohn Vitalian from place  
to place, Belisarius repaireth Rome and  
geueth notable and bloody repulses to the  
Gothes attempting to let him of hys pur-  
pose, and providech for the saufe keeping  
of the same.



¶ When Totilas departed  
fro Rome, he set a creb  
of souldiers against the  
cittie Portua in a place  
called Algidone, to the  
entet that Belisarius souldiers shul

The shamful  
flight of Iohn  
Vitalian.

not worke any thing in his absence,  
with the reste of his armie he went a-  
gainste Iohn into Calabre. As soon  
as Iohn heard of his comminge, he a-  
bandoned hym al vnto him and turned  
hys waye lyke a coward, not staying

## Gothes in Italy. 142.

In any place until he had recovered to  
Hydrunt whiche is the furthest towne  
of all Calabrie. By meanes whereof  
when Totilas came in those quarters,  
he quickely recovered the Lucanes,  
Brutians, and Calabrians whollye  
saunge Hydrunt. The same season  
Spolet revolted from the Gothes.  
There was nothyng kept of it but  
onelye the Castle, for Totilas had be  
fore tyme ouerthrowen the walles of  
the Towne. The authour of thys re-  
uolting was one Martian of Constanti-  
nople, who beyng one of the keepers,  
conspyred wyth eyghtene of the sol-  
dyers, and haupnge slayne the Cap-  
taine of the piece, yelded it vpp to He-  
lisarius. Aboute the same tyme al-  
moſte was Tarent repayred, whereas  
before, it had bene forsaken and left  
desolate. It was repayred by the Ca-  
labrians and other people that were  
driven out of theyr owne dwellynge  
by the warres. They were not able  
to build it of like hignes as it had bene  
in

The repai-  
ring of tarent



## Of the warre of the

in tymes passe. But takinge one pte  
of it buttynge vpon the hauen th  
fed on bothe sides wth the sea, the  
easily fortified the accesse vnto it fro  
the mayne lande. Totilas hauyn  
brought vnder hys subiection all  
townes of Lucanye and Calabria  
vnto Hydrunt, & determined to  
parte thence, and thereupon le  
vnto a garrison of soldiers at  
Cytie of Athens, wth the rest of h  
army marched towarde Rauenn  
In the meane whyle Belisarius  
ynge reuerent of hys longe com  
dedded age, tooke in hande a vol  
adventure, and (as many a man  
coude haue thought) a rather  
lthyche not wthstandinge in the en  
proved a courageous and laudable  
enterprise. He determined to  
vpon the towne and to fortifye  
Cytie of Rome, ynto at that tyme  
was hys desolate. Wherupon  
ynghys purpose secreete to hymse  
he left a fewe souldiers at port

isq: ad T  
suyr to gni

The repaier  
of Rome by  
Belisarius.

for defence of the towne, & wyth al the  
power he could make heryde, (no man  
eyther of hys owne or of hys enemies  
mistrustinge whereaboutes he went)  
tooke the Cytie of Rome and wyth a  
wonderfull celeritie wente in hand  
wyth repayringe and fortifyinge it a  
gayne. And bycause the walles in di  
uers places were beaten downe to the  
hard grounde, he fylled hye parte of  
theym wyth roughe stonke, and cut  
depe dyches before the walles, and  
caste hye a Rampyre the whiche he  
fensed wyth Trunkes of trees faste  
ned in the ground by the rootes wound  
one wyth in another, wyth the sharpe  
endes upwarde, And for the more  
Strength of the wall, newelye repa  
red he buylded towres and bulwarks  
of timber. The whiche things through  
the earnest labour and wyllynghes of  
hys souldyers, he curreished it in thre  
and twentye dayes. And shippes came  
continuallye from Portus laden with  
corne and other victualles.

The

## Of the boarre of the

The Citizens of Rome wherof there  
 stayed a greate number in the towne  
 nere aboutes, hearynge that the Citie  
 was repayred, were wonderful  
 desyrous to retourne into theyr native  
 Countrey, and that in especiall ye  
 cause there was plentye of corne there  
 wyth scarcetie wherof they were pin-  
 ched in other places. As sone as Do-  
 tilas had worde of thys, sothwyth al  
 other matters sette a parte, he made  
 haste towarde Rome. Belisarius  
 was not able to hange vpp the gates  
 of the Citie before his enemyes were  
 come. For he had not so good store of  
 Carpenters to repaire them in so shor-  
 tyne. The Gothes the fyfthe daye of  
 theyr countynge encamped themsel-  
 ues not farr from the Citie agaynst  
 the gate Salaria. The next morning  
 by the ryng of the sunne, wyth great  
 noyse and busie burlpe they marched  
 to the assault. Belisarius placed al  
 his tallest and hardiest men at y<sup>e</sup> gate  
 the rest he set vpon the walles & in the  
 bul

The Gothes  
 assault Rome  
 and are re-  
 pulsed.

bulwarkes, commaundynge them to  
beate theyr enemyes downe. The en-  
counter was belement and whote on  
bothe partes. For the Gothes came  
thither of sette purpose to haue wonne  
the Towne at the fyrste pushe. But  
when they sawe better defence made  
then they looked for, they were in such  
a furze and suche a rage, that they  
ranne desperatly vppon theyr enemyes  
lyke madde men, and stryuinge vna-  
uisedlye to gette vppe, were beaten  
downe and kylled wythoute mercy.  
It was wonder to see howe earnestlye  
and desperatlye it was foughte on  
bothe sydes that daye. For the assault  
beganne in the mornynge and ended  
not vntyll nyghte. After that it was  
ed darke the Gothes retred into  
theyr Tentres. But the souldyers of  
Belisarius partelye kepte theyr stan-  
dynge vppon the walles and bulwar-  
kes as they had beene placed by hym,  
and partelye warded at the Gates.

And



## Of the warre of the

And to the entent the enemye should  
not sodaynely comyn vppon theym  
in the night and take theym vniwar-  
ly be caused a greate soyte of Bulles  
and Brambles to be layde before the  
Gates. The nexte daye the Gothes  
approched to the Cytie in lyke soyte  
as they had doone before, and Be-  
lisarius and his men made lyke re-  
sistens. But when the assaulte was  
led to longe, the souldyers that kept  
theyr standynge at the Gate, yssue  
oute boldelye and encounterynge w<sup>th</sup>  
the Gothes hand to hand, at length  
putte theym to flyghte on that syde  
and w<sup>th</sup> manye woundes dyd  
theym sacre from the Gate. And  
so was that assaulte ended. After  
warde when they hadde bestowed  
manye dayes in healyng the woun-  
des and repayng the armour, the  
Gothes aduanced agayne to the as-  
saulte of the Cytie.

Belisarius

## Gothes in Italy.

145

Belisarius haunyng before well harted and encouraged hys souldiers, leauing neuerthelesse a rouement number bypon the walles and in the Towers, led the out at the gate. There was a whot and an eager battell fought hard at the gate, in the which when as Totilas his standerbearer was stricke starke dead from hys horse with a speare, and the stander ouerthrowe, there was much preasyng aboute it fro both sydes. The Gothes stryving to saue their stander leasse they shoulde be dishonored, and the souldiers of Belisarius endeouoring to obtayne the honour of wyunnyng the same. At laste the skymishe grewe to this issue, that the Gothes recovered their standard, & the souldiers of Belisarius had the bodye of the standerbearer, sayyng his lyft hand which the Gothes dyd cut of for speght that their enemyes shoulde not haue it, bycause there was a ring of golde vpon it. This done, Totilas perceauyng that his attempt was in vayne, blewe to the retreat

A notable repulse geuen to the Gothes by Belisarius.

I. j.

and

## Of the warre of the

and the next daye after wente by  
waye vnto Tybur . For as I told  
you before he helde that Citie , and  
hauing maruelously fortified the castle  
thereof vsed it as a Camp agaynst the  
Romaynes . The Romaynes to the  
intent they woulde not bee molested  
by their sodayne inuasions from that  
syde , brake all the byddges on the ri-  
uer Anio . This ryuer Anio spryngeth  
amonge the Heruices , and runnyng  
downe from the hylles cutteth the  
playne betwene Tybur and Rome .  
It hath verye stepe bankes , and the  
chanell is so deepe of water that it can-  
not be passed . And therefore there  
were byddges made vppon it from all  
the principall wayes , as from the  
gates Salaria , Nomentana , and T-  
burtyne . These byddges beinge  
that tyme cut of, there coulde no road  
be made agaynst the Citie of Rome  
on that syde.

## The .ii. Chapter

¶ After the departure of the Gothes from Rome. Totilas in the next spring goeth to the syege of Peruse, during whose being there, Iohn Vitalian attempteth many thinges in Capane to the great preiudice of the Gothes, wherewith Totilas being displeased goeth with such speede agaynst hym that he ouercame hym before he heard of hys commyng. the Emperour sendeth another bande of men into Italye at whose commyng. Belisarius sayling towarde Tarent is driven by tempeste to land at Croton where for wante of forage compelled to sende hys horsemen into the Countrey, through the negligence of the Captaynes loseth them. By meanes whereof he is fayne to sayle awaye into Sicill, during the which his absence Totilas besiegeth Ruscie,

¶ **A**FTER the departure of the Gothes Belisarius caused the gates and the pylon worke of them to be framed quietly, and when he had done, as though he had conquered the Citie agayne by force, he sente

L.ij.

the



## Of the warre of the

and the next daye after wente by  
waye vnto Tybur . For as I told  
you before he helde that Citie , and  
hauing maruelously fortified the castle  
thereof vsed it as a Camp agaynst the  
Romaynes . The Romaynes to the  
intent they woulde not bee molested  
by their sodayne inuasions from that  
syde , brake all the bydges on the ri-  
uer Anio . This ryuer Anio springeth  
amonge the Heruices , and runnyng  
downe from the hylles cutteth the  
playne betwene Tybur and Rome .  
It hath verie stepe bankes , and the  
chanell is so deepe of water that it can  
not be passed . And therefore there  
were bydges made vppon it from all  
the principall wayes , as from the  
gates Salaria , Nomentana, and Tiber-  
burtyne . These bydges beinge  
that tyme cut of, there coulde no road  
be made agaynst the Citie of Rome  
on that syde.

## The .ii. Chapter

¶ After the departure of the Gothes from Rome. Totilas in the next spring goeth to the siege of Peruse, during whose being there, Iohn Vitalian attempteth many thinges in Capane to the great prejudice of the Gothes, wherewith Totilas being displeased goeth with such speede against hym that he ouercame hym before he heard of hys commyng. The Emperour sendeth another bande of men into Italye at whose commyng. Belisarius sayling towards Tarent is driuen by tempeste to land at Croton where for wante of forage compelled to sende hys horsemen into the Countrey, through the negligence of the Captaynes loseth them. By meanes whereof he is fayne to sayle awaye into Sicill, during the which his absence Totilas besiegeth Ruscie.

¶ **A**FTER the departure of the Gothes Belisarius caused the gates and the iron worke of them to be framed quietly, and when he had done, as though he had conquered the Citie agayne by force, he sente  
 L.ij. the

## Of the warre of the

the keyes of it into Grece to the Emperoure Iustinian . And thus ended the twelveti yeare of thys warre. The next yeare following a litle before the spring came, Totilas set out of Turin & marched towarde Peruse . The same Towne was even then already besieged by another compaigne of the Gothes . And when corne beganne to be ware scarce & other victualles to fayle, Totilas went thither to the entent to kepe the towne strayghter, & to take awaye al hope of succour from the besieged. Whyle Totilas was occupied about the siege of Peruse, John taking a vantage of hys being there & perceyving that the Senators & noble men of Rome which Totilas had led prisoners wyth him were left in the towne of Campanie vnder the keepyng of his souldiers, thought to wyne hymself a name by deliuering them out of the enemyes handes. Whereupon he removed out of Calabrie with a troop of chosen horsemen, & after dyscontinuing

The doynge  
of John in  
Campanie.

## Gothes in Italy.

147

his iourney night no day until he came into Campanie. Totilas mistrusting as much, had appoynted a strong band of the Gothes thither. When they came vnto Minturne they stayed & sent certayne of their horsemen before to see what was done in the townes. Now it fortuned that the Gothe horsemen whiche were sente before, chaunced to lyght vppon John & hys horsemen, betwene whō there was a sharpe encounter. In the which John getting the vpper hand slewe many of them & wounded many, and put the reaste to flight. Through this discomforture they that abode behynde at Minturne were so discouraged, y they fled also. By meanes wherof John had leysure to lead away whom he lysted at hys pleasure. For y townes of Campanie wer vntwalled the Gothes hauyng lately before beate them downe. So that John toke all the Romaine prisoners that he founde in euery towne & deliuered them out of y handes of the Gothes, conueying them

L.ij. quite



## Of the warre of the

guyte awaye, all sayng Clement  
 & Drestes of the which the one would  
 not go away with hym, bycause he fe  
 red the Emperour whom he had offer  
 ed, & the other makinge excuse that he  
 wanted horses, taried in doubt whether  
 he might go or no. Whobcit there were  
 not Many Senators founde in Cam  
 paine, but very many of their wyues  
 daughters. For the men so, the most  
 part the same myght that the Citty was  
 taken, folloved the gien of warre and  
 fled with them to Portua. When Ti  
 tilas vnderstode of these thynges that  
 John had done, he was greatly moued  
 determining to be reuenged by him  
 And therupon leauing part of his army  
 at the siege of Peruse, he himselfe with  
 reison, made halte by great journey  
 through the countreies of the Picentes Ma  
 les, & Peligues, into Appulia, & new  
 reased, untill, by crossing the wayes  
 length he founde John in Calabrie wh  
 sodainly setting vpon him, he put him  
 al his army to flight & toke his tent

The great ce  
 leritie of To  
 tilas.

## Gothes in Italy.

148

Notwithstanding as it chaunced, the  
Gothes made no greare slaughter, by  
reash it was nighte whe they assailed y  
camp. By meanes wherof y souldiers  
did easily escape & hilde theselues in the  
next mountaynes. John & Arnulphus cap-  
taine of y Crutians who also serued in  
y warres with John, recovered out of y  
chace vnto Hydunt, & the souldiers af-  
terward some one way & some another  
resorted thither vnto the. Thys victorie  
of Totilas dyd greatlye renoune hys  
name. For it was thought to be a nota-  
ble matter, for a king to haue come frō  
y walles of Peruse into Calabrie, and  
y in so shorte space as a light iournyng  
man could scarcely haue done, hymself  
beyng not caried in a hoxselytter or a  
charpte, but euen wyth as much paine  
as the common souldier, on hoxsebacke  
laden with hys harnesse as other were.  
Not longe after that battell, another  
bande of souldiers sent from Justinian  
beganne to appoche vnto Hydunt.

For

The Emperour  
sendeth a new  
power into  
Italy.

## Of the warre of the

For the Emperour being moued with  
often letters from Belisarius, declar-  
ing the state of the warres & requesting  
ayde, determined to send a new power  
into Italy, & had writtten to Belisarius  
that he shoulde hve hym into Calabrie  
to receaue his souldiers & to make war  
agaynst hys enemyes there. Captaines  
of thys new armye were Valerian leader  
of the Armenians, & Mure leader  
of the Crutians. Belisarius vpon the  
receipt of the Emperours letters and  
comandement, leauyng the reaste of  
hys armye at Rome & at Portua vnder  
the charge & gouernement of his Lieue-  
tenant Conon, with nyne hundred  
chosen souldiers, (whereof seven hun-  
dred were horsemen and two hundred  
fotemen) toke shippynge & made sayle to-  
ward Calabrie. It was hys mynde to  
haue landed hys armye at Tarent, the  
which is two daies iourney distant from  
Hydrunt, & in the same place to haue as-  
sembled al the reaste of his power about  
hym. But by meanes of contrary winds

## Gothes in Italy. 149.

he was compelled to land hys men in the haven of Croton. For the violence of the tempest was such, that he could sayle neyther backward nor forward. Therefore when he had landed hys army at Croton, soasmuch as there was not plentye of forage in those quarters, he was constrained to seporate hys horsemen from hys footemen. For he hymself & his wyfe abode with his footmen at Croton, to the entent to call John with the reast of hys power vnto hym, & commaunded hys horsemen to go further into the countrie and to stay themselves in the borders of the Turnies. For in so doyng they shuld easly come by al thyngs necessarye for themselves and for their horses, and should also be out of all daunger, soasmuche as the mountaynes of Lucanie shopyng into the countrey of the Brutians, do make two valleyes, with narrowe enterances into them. And not farre from one of the valleyes standeth on the sea coast a Castell of the Turnies called Ruscie,

L.v. a lgt,



## Of the warre of the

a little above the whiche is the towne  
somewhat further from the water, situ-  
ate on a high ground, called Rustian.  
The same towne did John kepe with  
strong garrison of souldiers. Belisari-  
us therfore sent his souldiers into those  
borders, & made Captaynes ouer them  
one Phases a Spanyard a noble man  
of warre, & Barbation a Thracian, com-  
maundynge them in any wyse to keepe  
well the entrances of y<sup>e</sup> valleyes. When  
these horsemen were come into those  
quarters, by chaunce they met with  
horsemen of their enemies, wh<sup>o</sup> Totila  
had sent to attempt y<sup>e</sup> towne which (as  
I tolde you befoze) was kept by John  
of warre. After it came to y<sup>e</sup> encount-  
ter the souldyers of Belisarius albeit  
they wer fewer in number, yet they ea-  
sily overcame their enemyes & slew  
above two hundred of the. Afterward  
those y<sup>e</sup> abode still in that place, soz  
much as they wer the victours, and far  
fro the sight of their captaine, kept ney-  
ther order nor aray. But straying farre  
from

skirmish be-  
twene the im-  
periall & Go-  
thise horse-  
men.

## Gothes in Italy.

150.

from their standarde they passed not to kepe either watth o; ward, o; to send any skowtes abode, o; to haue any skowtes among the, no; yet to kepe y streightes at the entrance of the balley where they might easily haue kept out their enemye. Whereof when Totilas had vnderstanding he wente thither with thzee thousand horsemen and set tppon the ere they mistrusted any such thing. For he was passed those narrowe streightes and the entrances of the balley, before that Belisarius horsemen heard of hys comingyng. Hereuppon beganne a great slaughter and discomfiture to be made of them. Phasces and Barbatton were the Captaynes. Of the whiche Phasces wyth hys troope of horsemen setting hymselfe agaynst Totilas, dyd maruells in Armes, howbeit at the lengthe he and all hys men were slayne. Barbatton wyth no mo but two companions onely escaped by flyghte, the rest were eyther slayne o; taken prisoners.

Belisarius lo-  
seth his horse  
men through  
neglegence of  
the captaynes,

Some

## Of the warre of the

Some there were that taking themselves to flight at the first beginning, escaped to Belisarius & carped hym tydings of that great slaughter. When Belisarius had lost his horsemen, mistrusting that his enemies would come against hym, he took shipping in haste & greatly dismaide with sorrowe, abandoning himselfe to the windes arrived the same daye at Messina in Sicill the which is from Croton about fourescore myles. Totilas hauing dispatched these matters & thereby disposed of power of his enemies, determined to besiege the towne of Ruscia. For in that towne wer three hundred horsemen placed there by John, & an hundred footmen sent lately thither by Belisarius. Moreover there were a great number of Italians both horsemen & footmen, which if they shoulde be besieged, it was none other lyke but that they shoulde want victualles ere it were long. In hope whereof Totilas besieged the towne.

Totilas besieged  
Ruscia.

The

## Gothes in Italy.

151

### The.iii. Chapter.

¶ Conon Captayne of Rome is slayne of hys owne souldiers. Fortune afflicte the Imperials, Totilas receaueth Ruscie & putteth Colasus Captayne therof to death. Antonia the wyfe of Belisarius entreateth the Emperour that her housbande is called home out of Italy.

**A**Bout thys tyme, the souldiers that Belisarius lefte at Rome, slew their Captayne Conon in a rage bicause that by encroching the corne priuely into hys hand, he dayly raysed the pryce of the market. Upon the which facte they sent their messengers to h<sup>e</sup> Emperour for pardō of their trespassse asserteining hym that onlesse he would graunt it, & mozeouer paye them their wages that was behinde. they wold deliuer Rome vnto Totilas. For feare wherof the Emperour graunted them their whole request. They that were besieged at h<sup>e</sup> towne Rusciau, being distressed wyth scarcetie of corne, sel to communicatiō with

Conon Captain of Rome  
for hys couetousnesse is  
slayne of hys  
owne souldiers



## Of the warre of the

with Totilas, & toke a truce for a few  
dayes, promising to yelde up the towne  
onlesse they were rescowed in ſome mean  
tyme. Hereupon was preparatiō made  
by John, to rescowe them, & by Totilas  
to prohibite hym. In the meane season  
Belisarius was come out of Sicill, with  
to Hydunt & had receaued Valerian  
with the souldiers sent from the Em-  
perour, by meanes wherof he had a suf-  
ficient power. Neyther wanted he ship-  
pes to conuey them into the rescowe of  
hys complices. Therfore when al thinges  
were in a readinesse he embarked  
hys souldiers and sayled toward Rus-  
cie. They that were besyged seing the  
naue a farre of, (for the Citie standeth  
vpon a hygh ground & hath a large pro-  
spect into the sea) were so glad of it that  
they wolde not render the towne at the  
daye appoynted. It was not long af-  
ter but that there rose suche a tempeste  
that it despoiled the naue into sundrye  
places. The whiche afterwarde  
metyng all at Croton, set out a gayne  
from

The peruerse  
fortune of the  
imperialls.

## Gothes in Italy.

152

from thence and made sayle to Ruscio.  
 When the Shyppes approached nere the  
 lande, Totilas commaunded hys men  
 to arme them, & set themselves in aray  
 vpon the shore willing them with their  
 dartes & arrowes to prohibite the na-  
 uye from arriuall. When the Grekes  
 sawe that, they were so sore afrayed of  
 the daunger, that after they had houe-  
 red a whyle their aboutes making pre-  
 tence to arrive, at length despairing to  
 do that they came for, they turned their  
 Shyppes & went their wayes. After-  
 warde as they were consultyng what  
 was to be done for the safegarde of the  
 that were besyged, it was determined  
 that John & Valerian with y<sup>e</sup> hoysmen  
 & the reast of the armye shoulde go into  
 the countrey of Picene, & there kepe as  
 greate a fyre as they coulde, to the en-  
 tent that Totilas shoulde be compelled to  
 breake vp his siege to succour hys owne.  
 And that Belisarius shoulde wyth hys  
 nauye sayle vnto Rome, to appease  
 the mutinie amonge the souldyers  
 that

## Of the warre of the

that we spake of before, & to carry corne  
thither to victual the towne. According  
to this determination, John went by  
by through Appulia and the Countrey  
of the Marles to the Picentes by land.  
Valerian chose rather to goe by water.  
And so hauing embarked his souldiers  
he arrived at Aucona, & loyned himself  
with John. Yet notwithstanding for al  
this Totilas dyssolued not his syege,  
but sending two thousand horsemen a-  
mong the Picentes to defend þe towne  
agaynst John and Valerian, he himself  
with the reast of his armye continued  
his syege about Ruscia. The besy-  
ged when victualles vtterly fayled the,  
& that there remayned no hope of res-  
cove, sent one Deofer an Italian and  
Godilas a Thracian to Totilas, desy-  
ryng pardon and safetie of their liues.  
These men contrary to their expecta-  
tion found Totilas gentle and easie to  
be entreated. For he imputed þe breach  
of the truce to no man but one with the  
punishment of whom he sayd he wold  
be



he satisfied, & was contented to pardon  
all the residue. If they would serue  
hym they should keepe still all that euer  
they had, and yf they had rather goe  
some where elles they should departe  
euery man wyth one garment. By this  
meanes he receyued the towne, and af-  
ter that he had caused Colaser Cap-  
taine of the garrison to be whipped &  
mangled, (who was the occasion that  
the towne was not yeldded accordinge  
to couenant), he commaunded hym to  
be putte to death. Wyth the rest he  
keapt touch accordyng to hys promise.  
A great number of the men of warre  
(to the intent to saue that they had) a-  
bode still wyth Totilas. Othersome  
leauing theyr horse harnesse & all that  
they had besydes, went wyth one gar-  
ment vnto Croton. The goodes of  
the townesmen Totilas gaue for a  
praye to hys souldyers, commaun-  
dyng theyr bodes to goe at lybertye.  
About this tyme Antonia the wyfe  
of Belisarius went to Constantinople

The punish-  
ment of Cola-  
ser for brea-  
king of pro-  
myse.

The wyfe of  
Belisarius go-  
eth to con-  
stantinople.



Belisarius is  
called out of  
Italye.

**O**f the warre of the  
to sue to Theodoza the Emperesse to  
entreate that her husband mighte be  
called home out of Italy. But when  
she found that Theodoza was decea-  
sed a lyttle before, she went to them-  
perour her selfe and with muche sute  
carnestly entreated hym that her hus-  
band mighte be called oute of Italye.  
The whyche request she easely ob-  
tayne, so muche the rather because  
the Emperour stode in greate feare  
of warres in Parthia. Thus Belisarius  
beyng called out of Italye retur-  
ned into Grece almost fyue yere after  
he came thither last, not hauing had  
altogether so good fortune in this his  
latter viage as he had in his fyyste.  
At his departure from Rome he left  
thre thousande of chosen souldyers  
there in garryson vnder his gouernance  
of his Liuetenant Diogenes a man of  
much wisdome & knowledg in feates  
of armes. Anon after his departing  
Gothes toke by assaunt Peruse, which  
they had so long tyme beseged.

**C** The

# Gothes in Italy 154

## The. iiii. Chapter.

¶ Totilas besegeth Rome nowe the thyrde time, great sure is made to thempour for feldowing the same, Diogenes captayne therof prouiderh pollitiquelly and circumspcctly for the safty of it, neuertheles it is be-raised & taken, Diogenes flyeth to centmucelles, Paule another of thempour's captaines sauerh him selfe and his valiantlye, being besyged by the gothes in the Pyle of Adrian, Totilas endeuereth by all meanes to repaire and frequent Rome againe, and afterward sommoneth centmucelles which taketh truce wyth hym to yelde by a certayne day.

**T**otilas hauing set at a stay the affaires of Calabyle and Appulia, determined to tourne backe againe and besege Rome. It made hym the bolder that Belisarius was gone, together with the p:asperous successe of the Gothes in all their doyngs through Italye, and the euill fortune of the Grekes.

¶ The

Belisarius is  
called out of  
Italye.

**O**f the warre of the  
to sue to Theodora the Emperesse to  
entreate that her husband mighte be  
called home out of Italy. But when  
she found that Theodora was decea-  
sed a lyttle before, she went to them-  
perour her selfe and with muche sute  
carnelly entreated hym that her hus-  
band mighte be called oute of Italye.  
The whyche request she easely ob-  
tayned, so muche the rather because  
the Emperour stood in greate feare  
of warres in Parthia. Thus Beli-  
sarius beyng called out of Italye retur-  
ned into Grece almost fyue yere after  
he came thither last, not hauing had  
altogether so good fortune in this his  
latter biage as he had in his fyrste.  
At his departure from Rome he left  
thre thousande of chosen souldyers  
there in garryson vnder the gouernance  
of his Liuetenant Diogenes a man of  
much wisdome & knowledge in feates  
of armes. Anon after his departing  
Gothes toke by assault Peruse, which  
they had so long tyme beseged.

¶ The

# Gothes in Italy 154

## The.iiij. Chapter.

¶ Totilas besegeth Rome nowe the thyrde time, great sute is made to theemperour for relcowing the same, Diogenes capytayne therof prouiderh polittiquelly and circumspcctly for the safty of it, neuertheles it is betrayed & taken, Diogenes flyeth to centinues, Paule another of theemperours capytaines sauerh him selfe and his valiantlye, being besyged by the gothes in the Pyle of Adrian, Totilas endeuoreth by all meanes to repaire and frequent Rome againe, and afterward sommoneth centinucelles which takerh truce wyth hym to yelde by a certayne day.

**T**otilas hauing set at a stay the affaires of Calabyle and Appulia, determined to tourne backe againe and besege Rome. It made hym the bolder that Belisarius was gone, together with the prosperous successe of the Gothes in all their doyngs through Italye, and the euill fortune of the Grekes.

A. A. 154. 154.



## Of the warre of the

Wherevppon assemblyng a great power from all partes, when all things were in a readinesse, he came to Rome and besyged it. There were in garrison in the Towne three thousand chosen Souldoyers wyth theyr Capayne Diogenes a man of singular activitye, who by watchyng, working, and preuentynge in places conuenient defended the Citie stoutly. In so much that the syege was prolonged, and the Gothes had none other hope to winne it but by famyshment. Duryng the syege aboute the Citie, Vigilius the Bysshoppe of Rome beyng as then at Constantinople, and wyth hym many worthy men of Italy, made earnest sute to Iustinian that he woulde send Belisarius agayne into Italy w<sup>th</sup> an inestimable power to raise the sieg before Rome, otherwyse they declared that all was lyke to fall to utter ruine. The same thing also requested Goding one that had bene Constable was sent thither from the people of Rome.

Sute made to  
the emperour  
for rescowig  
the cytye of  
Rome.

## Gothes in Italy 155.

Rome as an Ambassadour. Justinian made them answer that he would provide wel ynough for the affairs of Italy. But he it through his delaying & doing of les day to day he did nothing in effect. At length when he saw the earnest in hand w<sup>ch</sup> him frō time to time & y<sup>e</sup> he could not be rid of the, he denouced Liberius one of the nobilitie of Rome Captayn generall of the warres in Italy; & at the begynnyng was verie whote in the furniture thereof. But within a while when other cares came in his head he beganne to waxe colde againe. And so with bayne hope some tyme makinge preparation and some tyme making delays the tyme passed awaye. Rome in the meane while was straightly besieged. For the Gothes hauinge wonne the Cytie Portua kept them so short that nothing coulde be conueyed in by the Tyber vnto them that were besieged. And to the entent Rome shoulde not be reueged from anye place, they had gotten

W. iij. into

the foresight  
and prouision  
of Diogenes  
for the sauing  
of Rome.

Rome is be-  
trayed.

T

1

**O**f the warre of the  
into theyr handes well nigh all the  
townes aboute it. But the foresight  
and prouision of the Lieutenant  
hys souldyers was wonderfull. For  
they foresawinge these thynges a good  
whyle before, had caused all the wynde  
roomes within the Citie (where there  
stood no buyldinges) to be sowred with  
corne. By meanes wherof it came to  
passe that by that tyme their old corne  
was spent, new came by within the  
walles, where through they endured  
the syege a long tyme. And by all  
likelihood they had saued the Citie had  
not the treason of a felo peruerter the  
For at the gate that leadeth to Ostia  
as ye goe to the Churche of S. Pauls  
Walle, there was a warde of Italian  
souldyers. They after long continu-  
uance of the syege, grudging  
amonge themselves that they were de-  
frauded of many yerres wages, in hope  
of greate rewarde at Lotilas hand  
stale pzenely vnto hym bargayning to  
betray hym the gate. Where the  
war

## Gothes in Italy 156.

warded, appoynting the tyme and the  
meane how to doe it. When the night  
presired was come, Totilas deuised  
thys cautele. He set two Barges vpon  
the Ryuer Tyber wyth Trumpet-  
tours in them, commaunding them  
to rowe vpp the streame and to gette  
as nere the wall as they coulde, and  
when they came there to blowe theyr  
trumpettes as terrpbly as they could.  
He hymselfe wyth hys araye wente  
sottlye wythoute noyse, and stayed a  
litttle waye from the gate before men-  
tioned. All thyngs happened according  
to hys desyre. For the trumpetours  
when they had rowed to the place ap-  
pointed, with the terrible and sodayne  
noyse of their trumpettes, strake the  
Romayns in such a feare that they be-  
leued their enemyes had bene there.  
In so muche that they flocked thither  
from all partes of the Citie, and they  
that watched in other places left their  
standinges, and came runnyng the-  
ther fearfully.

U. lly.

How



Rome is ta-  
ken.

The valiant  
doinges of  
captain Paule.

## Of the warre of the

poore whyles euery man resorted to  
that place, and tooke no heede to the  
rest, the traytours beyng lefte alone  
broke open theyr gate and let Totilas  
wyth hys armye into the Cytie, wher  
vppon immediatly ensued slaughter  
as well of the Romaynes as of the  
souldyers. There was not than any  
carr taken holwe to make resistens, but  
how to runne awaye. They fled by  
suche gates as were furthest fro the e-  
nemye. Diogenes the Captayne, for  
as muche as he sawe there was none  
other remedye pursued oute of Rome  
wyth parte of hys souldyers and tooke  
hys waye toward Centumelles. To-  
tilas presupposinge as muche before  
(for all the rest of the towne were lost  
& there was no mo left them to flye  
to but onely that) laide an ambusche  
for him by the way, into y<sup>e</sup> which Dio-  
genes falling lost a great parte of hys  
souldiers & himselfe beyng sore wound-  
ed had muche a doe to escape wyth hys  
life. There was at Rome among other  
Cap

# Gothes in Italy, 157.

Captaine one Paule of Sicilia, cap-  
taine of a troope of horsemen. He in this  
most troublesome nyght after he had  
skirmished with his enemies in diuers  
places of the Citie in the taking ther-  
of, at length recovered hymselfe with  
his horsemen vnto Adrians Tumbe.  
Asone as it was day light the Gothes  
swarming aboute the Citie (at what  
tyme that the Capitoll Esquille & al  
rest of y city was take) there was hard  
feyghting still at Adrians tumber. For  
Paule had .CCC. horsemen with  
the whiche he valiantly defended the  
Tumber and the brydge adioynynge  
thereto, In so muche that he slew ma-  
nye of the Gothes in the skymme by  
pon the brydge, & drave the rest a good  
way of. The whiche Totilas behol-  
ding caused his men to retire, & wyl-  
not (as he) bye the destructiō of these mē  
with the bloodshed of any of my people  
I will dispatch the sitting still & neuer  
trouble my self for the matter, conside-  
ring that neither they nor their horses

A.b.

haue

## Of the warre of the

haue wherw to sustaine their liues  
till to morow. Thus hauing called his  
men to the skirmishe, and set a strong  
watch against the tumber & the bridge,  
he commaunded y no man shuld molest  
or disquiet them y were besieged. Paul  
& his band of horsmen hauing fasted  
all that day & the nyght following without  
meate or drinke, the next day beganne  
to consylt what was best to be doone.  
There were y gaue counsel to endure  
the siegeris horsfleshe. But this deuise  
seemed horrible for the lothsomnes of y  
unaccustomed feeding. Hope to escape  
by fygght there was none, the Gothes  
besetting the on all sides round about  
ready at receipt to cut the of. So there  
remained no shift but to yeld, & that se-  
emed both perillous and dishonorable.  
And therefore Paule taking vpon hym  
to speake said in this wise. My fellows  
& companions in armes which way so  
euer we turne vs, yelce we are driuen  
to an vtter exigent. For there is no  
waie to escape by fygght, the enemies

The wordes  
of Paule to  
his souldiers.

enue

## Gothes in Italy. 158.

encircling vs round about with their  
 armie, and taking so good hede to vs.  
 And to yeld our selues to them, besides  
 the dishonour & cowardnes of the facte,  
 we are like to be horribly tormented &  
 rent i pieces. For y cruelty of these bar-  
 barous people is not wont to be coten-  
 ted w any simple kind of death. As to a-  
 bide the siege & to fcede vpon horselessh,  
 let the doo it that loke to be refreued.  
 I cannot see what reason ought to per-  
 suade vs vnto so great sufferance whi-  
 ch are utterly destitute of any such hope  
 onlesse that like a sort of faithfull  
 boies for feare of death we had rather  
 pine ourselues w sorrow than haue our  
 selfe cut w a sword. And I assure you  
 rather to yeld to the enemye or to starue  
 for hunger, I count it the propperie of  
 them that haue neither hart nor blood  
 in the. But for vs which are men of  
 our handes, & acquainted w feighting,  
 an honorable death is rather to be em-  
 braced then a shamefull lyfe.

And



## Of the warre of the

And therefore let vs in such wyse dye,  
that we may hath our selues in y<sup>e</sup> blow  
of our enemies & not die unreuenged.  
Let not our enemye laugh at our de-  
struction but wepe. Pryther let vs hold  
vp our throtes to be cut by them, but  
lette vs with our weapons cut theirs.  
For what can the respite of a few yerres  
profit vs: sythens that if we should es-  
cape alieue now, yet are we sure we  
shall die ere it be longe after. Gloyre  
may lengthen mens liues, but nature  
cannot. Aduaunce your selues forth  
ye therefore to an honorable death,  
the whiche our enemyes aswell as  
our countrey men maye wonder at and  
extoll wyth eternall prayes to the sky.  
The horsmen encouraged wyth these  
wordes bolued them selues to deathe.  
And therupon embracing and hel-  
ping one another they prepared them-  
selues to the battell full haert and de-  
termyned to spend theyr liues man-  
fully. Their purpose was to runne  
bypon

## Gothes in Italy 159

oppoſe the Gothes that warded next  
vnto them, and to beſtow e they: lyues  
in the ſlaughter of they: enemyes.

Fortune ſaw  
reth the cou-  
ragious,

When Totilas ſawe them thus bent  
to trye the vtter moſt, ſo: ſcare leaſt  
the deſperate endeuour of them ſhould  
doe the Gothes moze diſpleaſure, then  
otherwyſe ſo ſmall a number were a-  
ble to doe, he ſent an herault to them  
offeryng theym choyce whether they  
would departe wyth they: lyues lea-  
uyng they: Hoxe and armour behynd  
them, or elles retaining all ſhull ſerue  
hym in hys warres in lyke eſtate wyth  
other of hys ſouldyers. When the  
hoſemen heard that they were verye  
glad, and at the firſte choſe to leaue all  
that euer they had: to goe to Conſtan-  
tinople. But afterward conſidering y  
long iourney, and the daungers that  
might happen by the waye, they retur-  
ned their myndes & choſe to abyde all  
w<sup>th</sup> Totilas, ſayng their Captayne  
Paule & Mundus an Iſaurien. Theſe  
two ſo, as much as they had wiſe and  
chil.

Totilas she-  
weth himself  
earnest in re-  
paring and  
peopling of  
Rome.

## Of the warre of the

childre at home, desired to depart. And  
Totilas helping them liberally wyth  
blande & other necessaries, sent them a-  
gain to Constantinople. Furthermore  
he commaunded þ no man should be  
so hardy as to offer any wrong to any of  
thoſe ſouldiers in garrison that had  
taken ſanctuarie in þ church. Toward  
the Citie of Rome he neither extended  
any crueltie, nor went aboute to make  
it deſolate as he had done before. But  
made a ſerch for the Cittizens therof in  
the towneſ of Campanie & in other pla-  
ces, & reduced them home again. Fur-  
thermore he made in Rome tourneies  
and iuſtes & ſuch other princelye paſ-  
times as are wont to be done in forti-  
nate & quiet Citties with greāt coſt and  
ſolemnitie, to the entent the Cittizens  
ſhould conceiue good hope, & haue a de-  
ſire to the Citie. The houſes alſo whi-  
ch had bene querthowen or conſumed  
w fire in the former deſolation of the  
towne, he went about to reediſie and  
repare



## Gothes in Italy 160

repayre. Finally he shewed nowe as  
great a desyre of replenishinge Rome  
as he had doone before of waiking and  
leauyng it desolate. Thys so great mu-  
tabilitie and alteration of hys mynde,  
somme beleued to haue risen vppon a  
vow that he had made to the Apostles  
Peter & Paule, whose temples he myght  
seme to haue destroyed whē he destroyed  
the citie. Other some imputed it altogi-  
ther to the profyte and commoditie of  
the warres. And dyuers doe reporte  
that when Totilas latelye before de-  
spised the Frenche kynges daughter  
in mariage, aunswere was made  
vnto him that he was not kynge of Ita-  
lye when he had subuercted the Cytie  
of Rome. The whiche Taunt (men  
saye) altered hys mynde to the re-  
payrynge of the Cytie. But what  
so ever was the cause of it, he ende-  
uored to repayre and buylde agayne  
the Cytie of Rome. After thys he  
prepared to make a voyage into Sicill.



## Of the warre of the

For the furniture wherof he builded him a great flete of Gallies, & made a great number of hoyses and hulkes while he was making preparation for the same, he determined to besiege both by water and by lande Centmucelles whiche one Citie was not yett come under his subiection. Captayne of that piece was Diogenes who (as is before mentioned) escaped lately from Rome. He had gathered to hym a good stronge companie of men of warre. Therefore at suche tyme as the Gothe armie came thither and had encamped theselues nere vnto the walls of the towne. Totilas sendyng an officer of Armes to hym, sommoned hym either to come & feght it out w<sup>th</sup> his power against the gothes, or els to yeld vnto the towne vnto hi. For it was not so for him to loke for any help at Iustinians hand considering he neuer releued Rome at the while it was besieged, onles perchance he thought the emperour did set more by Centmucells then by Rome.

Diogenes

Totilas som-  
moneth cent  
mucelles.

## Gothes in Italy.

161

Diogenes replied therunto saying, that as for to fyghte with hym he was not mynded at that time, and as for to yeld by the towne sauing his honour and fidelitie he coulde not, before he had sente to knowe the Emperours pleasure, and to desyre helpe. Whercuppon for as muche as he seemed to speake that which was honest and reasonable they fel to composition, that onlesse the Emperour after warnyng geuen, dyd rescolue the towne by himself or by his reputie, Diogenes should surrender it at a certayne daye. And Totilas shoulde not in the meane season by any meanes moleste or dysquiet hym. For the assurance of these Articles Hostages were deliuered, and vppon thys agreement Totilas brake by his siege.

### The.v. Chapter.

& Totilas makynge warre in Sicill beliegeth Siracuse, a new Lieutenannt is sent from the Emperour into Italy.

E. J.

When

Totilas ma-  
keth warre in  
Sicill

## Of the warre of the

**W**hen all thynges were now in a  
readinesse that were to be prepa-  
red. Totilas turned hymselfe to  
the warres in Sicill, commaundynge  
that his shippes shuld be ready at hand  
in the narrowe seas of Sicill. He hym-  
self went by land vnto Rhegium, pur-  
posynge to haue wonne the towne by  
force. Captaynes of the towne were  
Teremund and Imere placed there by  
Belisarius not longe before. Whodiu-  
uerse & sundry tymes repulsed the Go-  
thes to their great losse, attemptynge to  
wyne & towne by assault. By meanes  
wherof Totilas despayning to get it by  
violence, determined with long conti-  
nuance of hys siege to subdue them by  
fampshment. And therefore leauynge a  
number of the Gothes about it, he con-  
ueyed all the reall of hys armie by wa-  
ter to wyne Tarent, the which he easi-  
ly obteyned. From thence wastynge ou-  
er into Sicill, after & he had eyther by  
force of Armes or els by composition  
gotten into his hand certayne of & lesser  
townes,

## Gothes in Italy.

162

to wnes, at length he besieged Siracuse The syege of Siracuse.  
 both by sea & by land. By that tyme the  
 Gothes which (as ye heard before) wer  
 sent among the Vicentes against John  
 & Valerian, hauing associated greate  
 ayde vnto them and gotten the vpper  
 hand in diuerse conflyctes, toke the Ci-  
 ty Arimine. And in another encoun-  
 ter not farre from Rauenna, they slew  
 there Captayne of the Clurians wpth  
 all hys holke. Moreover Teremund &  
 Amere whiche were besieged in the  
 towne of Rhegium, for want of victu-  
 als were fayne to yelde themselves &  
 the towne to the Gothes. All these  
 thynges being declared to the Empe-  
 rour at one instant, namely the takyng  
 of Rhegium, Tarent, and Arimine,  
 and the passyng of Totilas into Sicill,  
 made hym vtterly aghoged to heare of  
 so many misfortunes at once. And ther-  
 vpon he denounced one Germã his cou-  
 sin Germine by y<sup>e</sup> fathers side captaine  
 of y<sup>e</sup> warres in Italy agaynst y<sup>e</sup> Gothes  
 commaunding great preparation to be  
Æ.ij.      made



A new Lieue-  
tenant sente  
into Italy for  
themperour,

**O**f the warre of the  
made for y same. **W**hen y same hercof  
was blowen into Italy, it greatly abas-  
shed y enemye & recōforted hys frends.  
For thys Gerinā was a man of a hault  
courage, and of no lesse wysedome and  
pollicye, wonderfull lyberall, and be-  
rye welbeloued both wyth the people  
and wyth the souldyers. Besydes  
thys he had after the death of Vitigis  
taken to wyfe Mathasuta the nece of  
Kyng Theoderych, the whiche thyng  
wonne hym the hartes of the Gothes:  
and therefore as the fame of hym was  
great, so was he greatly leked & longed  
for in Italy.

The.vi. Chapter.

**&** Diogenes dalayeth with Totilas in deliue-  
ryng vp of Centmucelles accordyng to cō-  
position. The newe Lieuetenant of I-  
taly, dyeth in hys waye whose sonnes are  
commaunded to prosecute theyr fathers  
charge.

The Sclauines

**W**hen German was now in Illi-  
ricke, the nation of the Sclauines  
bauing passed y riuer of Danow,  
inuaded

## Gothes in Italy.

163

invaded the provinces of the Emperre  
of Rome. A kynde of people cruell and  
outragijs beyonde all measure, whose  
turnyng themselves toward Macedo-  
nie and Thrace, put Justinian in suche  
a feare, that he commaunded German  
to stay his iourney into Italy. Through  
this taryng the Gothes had leysure to  
do what they lyst in Italy and Sicill.

In the meane season came the daye ap-  
pointed that Diogenes should haue de-  
livered Centimucelles, wherupon To-  
tilas sendyng vnto hym required hym  
to performe hys promyse. Diogenes al-  
ledged that Germane was newly crea-  
ted Captayne of the warres in Italye.  
By reason whereof he sayd the state of  
thynges was wholly altered, so that it  
laye not in his power to yelde h<sup>e</sup> to wne,  
seing h<sup>e</sup> Lord & proper owner of it was  
on hys iourney & would with in two or  
three daies be in Italy. Totilas was be-  
sieging Siracuse in Sicill, and the Go-  
thishe men of warre skohoring through  
the whole countrie, made haucke of al

Fig.      thynges

The answer  
of Diogenes  
to Totilas for  
Centmucelles

## Of the warre of the

thynges . In Italy Rauenna, Aus-  
chon, Hydrunt, and Centmucelles  
wyth certayne other towne remained  
styl imperiall. The Gothes helde all  
the reast. One only hope stayed them,  
namely the comyng of German, the  
whyche also sayled them . For wher-  
as he was sore longed for in Italye,  
he was taken with a disease, and to the  
great sorowe of all þ were belonging  
to hym dyed in Illiricke. German had  
two sonnes whom he led with hym in-  
to Italy. Them dyd the Emperour co-  
maunde to procede with their fathers  
enterpryse, ioyntly together with theyr  
kynseman John Italian the Captaine  
so well knowen in Italy. For John had  
marryed the daughter of German. John  
therfore & the sonnes of German taking  
the charge of the army byd them, came  
vnto Salons. And forasmuche as wynt-  
er was at hand they determyned to a-  
byde that season there, & in the begyn-  
ning of the nexte spring to passe ouer to  
Rauenna. About the same tyme well  
rye

The death of  
Germane.

## Gothes in Italy.

164

nye, Liberius being sente from them perour wyth a nauye entered into Syracuse, mawgre the Gothes that kepte their station in the hauen to prohibyte their arriuall. Howbeit for doubt of scarcety of victualls whyche so greate a number was soone lyke to cause in a Citye besieged, he purposed to goe his way agayne: and therfore wyth in a fewe dayes after hys commyng he tooke shippynge agayne and departyng from Syracuse arriued at Panormie.

### The.vi.Chapter

¶ Narses is sente agayne Lieutenannt into Italye wyth a greate power and greate treasure, Totilas sendeth a nauye into Grece to infeste those countreyes, and besyegeth Aucon in Italye. The Captaynes of Totilas are ouercome on the sea by the Imperialls and Aucon is rescued The Gothes receaue another overthrow vpo the land, after the which certain Gothishe Captaynes become imperiall.

X.iii.

Narses



## Of the warre of the

Narſes marcheth with an ineſtimable power to Rauenna and from thence toward Rome in the which iourney he vanquiſheth a Captayne of the Gothes and killeth hym at Arimine. He encountereth with Totilas who in the ſame conflict is ſlayne and Teias created kyng of Gothes in hys ſteade.

Narſes is  
made them-  
perours Lieue-  
tenant in I-  
taly.

**I**n the meane whyle the Emperour altering hys purpoſe, made hys Em-  
nuch Narſes Lieuetenant general  
of the warres in Italy, making hym  
large promyſes of men and mony. Alſo  
he wrote to John that he ſhoulde not  
paſſe into Italy, but tary ſtil at Salons  
& there abyde the coming of Narſes.  
Narſes therfore taking the charge cou-  
ragiouſly vpon him, endeouored to leue  
a great power from all places. To the  
perſormance whereof greatly anayled  
hys fauour & authoritie. For he was  
one of the Emperours prouis Counſel  
and ruled hym in manner as he liſte, &  
he had greate frendſhip and Alliance  
with the Kings and the great Princes  
of

## Gothes in Italy. 165.

of the Barbarous nations. When hys Narfes is stay-  
 furniture was in a full readinesse, and ed by the  
 that he had commaunded hys men of Hunnes.  
 warre to mete hym all in Illiricke, as  
 he was outward on hys iourney, & was  
 come to Philippople in Thrace, he was  
 of necessitie constrained to staie and a-  
 byde a tyme in the same place. For the  
 Hunnes enterpng with a great armye  
 into Macedonie & Thrace, made spoyle  
 of all thyngs, & had closed hys way that  
 he could not passe. At the length when  
 one parte of the Hunnes was gone to  
 Thessalonicke & the other to Constan-  
 tinople, Narfes went from thence and  
 kept on his iourney. By this time To-  
 tilas (hearyng of the great preparature  
 of his enemies) was returned into Ita-  
 ly. Leaning for Lieutenantes of the  
 warres in Sicil fourc of his captaines,  
 & he hymself made prouisiō in Italy for  
 all thynges that semed nedeful & requi-  
 site. And to the entent to baunt hys Totilas sedeth  
 power to the Grekes (as whor shoulde a nauye into  
 say he was as well able to inuade them Grece.

F.v. as

## Of the warre of the

as they had bene to haue inuaded hi, he sent a great flete into Grece, commaundyng them to make as muche hauocke & spoyle of all thynges as they could accordyng to the saue commaundement thys nauye, spoiled fyrst Corfya & the Isles adioynnyng therunto, & afterward aduenturyng vppon the mayne land, wasted and spoiled with fyre & sword all the coast of Cypous, Acarnauia and Aetolia. And so keeping still the seas, did cut of many Greke shippes by y waie as they were sayling toward Italy and Illicium, in somuch y no shippe coulde fyre abrode for them. Whyle these thynges were a doying in Grece, Lottas sendyng a freshe crewe of souldiers into the Countrey of the Picentes, commaunded that Aucon shoulde be besieged both by sea & land. He made thre Captaynes of thys enterpryse: Scipus, ar Adilas & Gothidil, to whom he gaue a flete of seuen and fortye Galleyes. Whē Aucon was thus besieged, there were

The besyeging  
of Aucon.

## Gothes in Italy. 166.

were so whote assautes geuen both by  
sea and by land, that it stode in greates  
perrill. Wherefore Valerian who had  
the rule of Rauenna, soasmuche as he  
thought hymselfe to weake to rescowe  
them that were besyged, he wrote to  
John Aitalia lping at Salons, request-  
ing hym to ioyne wyth hym and so to  
rescowe them together. John Al-  
beit the Emperoure had geuen hym  
commaundemente that he shoulde not  
passe into Italye befoze the commyng  
of Parles, yet notwithstandyng so-  
asmuche as he thought it agaynste his  
honoure to lye styll and looke on while  
his companions were in suche seoper-  
dye, he chose oute the beste men in  
all his hoste and embarkyng them in  
eyghtene shyppes, set out of Salons  
and sayled towarde Rauenna. As  
he was in his waye Valerian met him  
wyth twelue galleyes well decked and  
furnished to fight. When y Captaines  
had commoned betwene themselves,  
and



## Of the warre of the

and by the aduise of such as were about  
them had determined as seemed best  
they sayled with their whole nauye to-  
gether agaynst their enemyes. And  
whē they came nere vnto Aucon, they  
drew to the shore at a place which the  
inhabiters do call Duasse. The which  
thyng assone as the Gothyshe Cap-  
taynes perceaued, they also addreessed  
themselues to the encounter furnishing  
their nauie with the beste souldiers  
they coulde chose, & when they had put  
themselues in a readinesse, launche  
forth & set themselues in good order a-  
gaynst their enemyes. The Gothyshe  
shyppes wer in number seuen & fortie  
& the Grekes were thirtys, Captaynes  
whereof were John and Valerian, and  
Captaynes of the Gothyshe nauie were  
Adilas & Gothidill: for Scriuar abode  
with the reast of the armye to keepe the  
Camp. Therefore after that the Cap-  
taynes of eyther parte had encouraged  
their men, and with warlyke orations  
inflamed theyr myndes wyth hope of  
victorie

Battell on the  
sea betwene  
the Gothes &  
the imperials

## Gethes in Italy.

167

victorie. With eager stomackes they joy-  
 ned battell. At the very first beginning  
 the encounter was fierce, meeting with  
 Reme to Reme & eche endeaouring  
 to ouermatche other, and the matter  
 was handled with greate courage on  
 both partes. For there was not any one  
 in all that great companie whiche had  
 not hys handes full. Insomuch that the  
 matter was tryed wyth dartes, Jau-  
 lyngs, pykes, and swordes as if it had  
 bene a battell vpon the land. Howbeit  
 in continuance the Gothe the nauie be-  
 ganne to go by the worse. For albeit  
 they were good men of their handes &  
 skilfulle warryours, yet forasmuche as  
 they wanted experiance in sea matters,  
 they troubled themselves. For in some  
 places they clustered so together, that  
 one had not roome to styre by another,  
 and other some agayne to eschewe that  
 fault, disseuered themselves so far fro  
 the helpe of their companie, that their  
 enemyes had them alwayes at aduan-  
 tage. Whereas on the contrary part the  
 Grekes

Conning & ex-  
 perience pre-  
 uayleth a-  
 gainst force.

21

## Of the warre of the

Grekes wer greatly furthered through  
their connyng the good order of their  
Sea men there was no araye broken. A  
man could not haue sene among them  
any throngyng, nor scatteryng, but  
y they were cuer nere at hand to helpe  
their companye & to be helped of them.  
And therefore as reason was, at length  
they gatte the vpper hand. Some of the  
Gothys the shippes were sunke w<sup>th</sup> their  
men of warre marriners & al. Many bo  
ing wonne by fyne force were with in  
credible slaughter taken. The whiche  
whē the Gothes beheld, by and by they  
toke them to flight. There were no mo  
but ten of their shippes that escaped to  
land vpperished. The reast were either  
taken or ells drowned, there was made  
a great slaughter of the men in the bat  
tell and in the chace. They that escaped  
to land, dyd forthwith set their shippes  
on fyre, to the entent their enemyes  
shoulde not obtayne them, & returned  
into their Camp. Where they were  
stricken with such a feare, that they de  
termined

the Gothes  
are vanqui-  
shed and Au-  
con rescowed

## Gothes in Italy.

168

determinned to breake vp their siege. Whereupon in all haste they forsooke their Campe and fled vnto Aurimum. John and Valerian enteriug into the haven of Aucō with their victorious nauy to the great comfozt and incredible reioyement of the Townesmen, made hast to ryfflyng of the enemyes Camp. The which they findyng forsaken, caused all the victualls & artillery that they founde there to be conueyed into the citie. They thesclues within fewe daies after departed, Valerian vnto Rauenna and John vnto Salons. Thys battell dyd soze discourage the hartes of y<sup>e</sup> Gothes, & was as it were a preparatiue of a greater ruine y<sup>e</sup> was toward them. For Totilas bring not a little disquietted w<sup>th</sup> this losse pulled backe a greate part of his army out of Sicill. By meanes whereof Artauanes the Emperours Captayne subrogated in y<sup>e</sup> Rome of Liberius hauyng reccaued hys nauy of hym, beganne to growe y<sup>e</sup> stronger in Sicill.

Fortune turneth agaynst the Gothes.

Insomuch



## Of the warre of the

The Gothes  
receiue ano-  
ther discomfi-  
ture.

Insomuche that he not onely deliuered  
his confederates from y<sup>e</sup> besiegemente,  
but also besieged the Gothes in diuerse  
places in their owne towne. Noe couer  
ere it was long after, an other nauie of  
Grekes commyng vnloked for to the  
rescoue of the Trotoniens longe tyme  
besieged by the Gothes, raysed y<sup>e</sup> siege  
& discomfited their enemyes with great  
bloudshed & slaughter. The Gothes be-  
ing disperfed fled some to Tarent, and  
some withdrew themselves into the  
next mountayne called Scyllaum, the  
which ouerthrowe together with y<sup>e</sup> for-  
mer slaughter, dyd muche moze discour-  
rage the hartes of the Gothes, In espe-  
cially forasmuch as there went a great  
brute through out all Italy of Marcellus  
comyng & of his preparatiō for y<sup>e</sup> wars,  
what great furniture he brought with  
him, & that ther began already to spring  
by certain rebellions against Totilas.  
For one Reguaris a noble mā among  
the Gothes Captaine of Tarent, and  
Morras captayne of Acheruse, reuolted  
to

Reuoltyng to  
the part of the  
imperialles.

## Gothes in Italy 169

to the Emperour with theyr folowes  
and souldiers wherof they had charge. The power  
Furthermoze tydinges was brought of Narles.  
of another insurrection agaynst the  
Gothes in Sardinia. Whyle thyn-  
ges were in thys estate in Italy, Nar-  
les assemblynge hys power in the  
wynter season, addressed hymselfe  
to hys Journey: he had suche an ar-  
mye of men, as scarce all the Cap-  
taynes beyng putte all togyther,  
broughte wyth them into Italye du-  
rynge the whole tyme of thys warre.  
For the Emperour gaue hym so large  
allowaunce of monnye, and he hym-  
selfe was so bountefull and lyberall in  
bestowing & distributing of the same, &  
he leuied a greate power not onely in  
Thrace & Grece, but also out of diuers  
other places. For he had entertained a  
houe fiue M. Lombardes notable me-  
of war by the consent of Albuine theyr  
kinge, and, M M M. of the Erulians.  
Furthermoze there came vnto hym a  
greate number of the Hunnes.

Albuine king  
of Lombard-  
des.

Cumades a  
Persian,

## Of the warre of the

Also there was one Cumtades a Persian that had bene trayned vpppe in the Romaine warres, who with a valiant band of Persians resorted vnto hym. Moreover there came to hym a warlike yong gentleman called Astuades wyth fyue hundred feyghtynge men of the Sepides : and John surnamed Phagas wyth an hoste of the Grekes and Thracians . Besydes this, John Italian, and the sonnes of Germaine serued hym wyth theyr armys. Pares therefore hauyng thys so great an hoste , as soone as the sprynge tyme approached , passed oute of Illiricum throughe Dalmatia and Liburnia and so coastynge aboute the elbowe of the Sea came by lande into Italye, not stayinge anye where vntyll he was amonge the Venetians . There were twoo wayes by the whyche he myghte handsomelye passe from the Venetians . The one by the Adriaticke Sea , the other throughe the mayne Lande , bothe whyche seemed to

## Gothes in Italy 170

to haue manye lettes . For by the  
 Seas syde the Ryuer Athesis maketh  
 greate Lakes whyche fall into the  
 Sea in manye Chanelles, and the ri-  
 uer Po beyng deuyded into manye  
 streames , dothe in byuers places in-  
 terrupte the Journey , wyth manye  
 quampers and moorthe groundes, *quampers*  
 so that an Armye can not well be led  
 that waye wythoute greate trouble.  
 Agayne in the waye by the mayne Teias after-  
 Lande one of the Gothes called Te- ward king of  
 ias placed at Veron wyth an Armye the gothes.  
 by Totilas , had intercepted hys pas-  
 sage ouer the Ryuers of Athesis and  
 Po. These twoo streames runnyng  
 downe from the Alpes whych deuyde  
 Italy from Fraunce and Germanye,  
 dooe fall into the Adriatycke sea. And  
 therefore they that wyl passe from  
 Venice, muste needes passe ouer them  
 eyther by the Seas syde where as be  
 Lakes and meres fallynge by byuers  
 Chanelles into the Sea , and where  
 the mouthes of Po doe ouerthwart  
 them



## Of the boarre of the

them betwene Rauenna & Clodius  
diches: a) ells they must passe the same  
riuers in the mayne land, where they  
be great & vnderided, and where they  
may easily be stopped of their passage, if  
there be any body to withstand them.  
Wherefore seing y<sup>e</sup> Tulas was at Ae-  
ron the which is a citie standing vpon  
the Riuer Athelis, & had a power suf-  
ficient to let him of his passage Parles  
left the way throughe the maine land,  
& chose to go by the coast of the Adya-  
ticke sea, both bicause it was wout im-  
peachment of enemies, & besides that,  
was nearer way then thother. And so  
marchig by Clodius diches & the felds  
of Adya, and passing ouer the Riuers  
whersoever they crossed his way, some  
where with bydges & some where w  
botes, at length he came with al his ar-  
mie vnto Rauenna. There Captaine  
Alcrician and Captaine Iustine wyth  
their bandes, ioyned themselves with  
Parles. There were in Italpe a great  
number of old souldiers, who by reasb  
the

Narles com-  
ming to Ra-  
uenna.

## Gothes in Italy 171.

the Emperour was behind hand with  
 their wages for a long tyme together  
 were offended in thei hartes, and  
 woulde not go forth to the warres.  
 Charles payed thei all thei wages,  
 wherby he healed thei griefes and  
 gaue thei courage agayne.  
 Hauynge spent nyne daies in dooynge  
 these thynges and in refreshing thei  
 armye at Auennia, he remoued from  
 thence & marched toward Rome. The  
 same tyme was one Asdilas captayne  
 of Arimine as notable a warrior as  
 was among al the gothes. At the tyme  
 as the Toward of Charles hoste was  
 come into the felde of Arimine, to wit  
 about to stoppe thei of their passage.  
 The kynge that tyme by Arimine  
 was ryled wth by thei, byppon the  
 whiche was a bridge so harde vnder  
 neath the Colone that it was an ea  
 sye matter to stoppe the passage.  
 Asdilas therefore pssynge out of A  
 rimine before that anye number of  
 englyshmen could be gathered.

A conflict at  
 Arimine.

Of the warre of the  
hys enemyes had passed the wyner,  
sette hymselfe at defence on the fur-  
thersyde, and encountered wyth hys  
enemyes euen harde vnder the walls  
of the towne. In the whych confyte  
a certayne man of Armes of the Cru-  
lians feyghtyng wyth Alouilas hande  
to hand slewe hym, and hys souldiers  
discouraged wyth the deathe of theyr  
Captayne, rettyred fearefully into the  
Towne. The head of Alouilas was  
broughte vnto Marles, at the whiche  
the Marles reioynged and takyng it  
for a token of good lucke, that the  
chefe of hys enemyes was slayne by  
hys men at the Crilla confyte, kepte  
on hys waye full of good hope and  
comfote. For albeit he had a good fur-  
theraunce to the takyng of Arminie  
at the same instant, yet notwithstanding  
he wold not tary about it to the extent  
so great an army shuld not be lettred  
about the sege of one towne, & therfore  
he passed by Arminie & continued on  
his iourney. Totilas hauing intelligens  
of

## Gothes in Italy 172.

of those things y<sup>e</sup> were done amonge y<sup>e</sup> Venetians, & vnderstanding of the passage of Parles and of his comming to Rauēna, although almost al his whole power were at that time w<sup>th</sup> Teias, yet notwithstanding he determined to encounter w<sup>th</sup> Parles, the which he did, & in the battell was slayn for his labour. As many of the Gothes as escaped from the field, fled ouer the riuer Po & assembled together at Paue & there abouts. In the whiche place as they consulted of making a newe gouernour of they<sup>r</sup> people, Teias was preferred by the iudgement of all men & chosen king of the Gothes. After that he was thus installed in the siegē royal, by & by he toke to his vse the treasures that Totilas had laid by at Paue, diligently going in hand to repaire his power, to raise a new army, to geue & distribute horse & armour, & to doe all other things vigilantl<sup>y</sup>, and moreouer to send to the Frenchmen to allure them to take his part in the warres.

The death of Totilas.

Teias is created kinge of the gothes.

P. liij.

Par:



## Of the warre of the

### The.viii. Chapter.

Narſes continuinge his iourney receiueth Parma and Peruſe, and winneth Rome by aſſaulte, wherevpon the gothes extend a maruelous crueltye againſt the Romaine pryſonners.

**N**ARSES hearynge therof, commaunded Valerian to lye as it were in garrifon wyth hys band about the Ryuer Po, to the entent the Gothes ſhoulde not ſtraye to farre abroad at theyr pleasure wythoute feare and he hymſelfe wyth the reſt of hys armye marched to Rome. In hys waye Parma was gelded bype to him and he graunted the men of Spolet certayne of hys ſouldiers for theyr defence untill they myght repayre theyr walles whyche Totilas had beaten downe. Also he ſent to Peruſe to ſummon that Towne, there were in Peruſe two Captaynes Melegidius and Alithus. Who beyng at variance betwene themſelues dyue ſoundre wayes

## Gothes in Italy.

173.

swayes . For Melegidius coueted to  
yelde vpppe the Citty . But Alithus  
beynge gyltye of the treason and the  
murther latelye commytted agaynste  
Cyprian, stroue agaynste it, for feare  
to be punnished accordyng to hys de-  
sertes. By meanes whereof there rose  
contention, in the whyche Alithus  
was slayne, and Peruse was yelded  
vpppe to Harses by Melegidius. After  
thys Harses procedyng to Rome be-  
sieged it. The Citty of Rome at  
that tyme stode in thys estate. The  
Citizens beyng afflycted wyth the  
former calamities resorted not in any  
greate number into the Citty. He  
should haue seene whole streetes em-  
ptye and neither man nor woman dwel-  
lynge in theym, and the houses ey-  
ther fallen downe or elles bourned.  
For Totilas not able to repayre it a-  
gayne speciallye the Citizens beyng  
so sore wasted and in manner de-  
stroyed.

Melegidius  
and Vlihus  
Captaines of  
the Gothes.

The

## Of the warre of the

The Gothes therfore distrusting their own weaknes that they were not sufficient to defend the whole Citie, had chose a piece of ground not very bigge nere vnto Adrians tymbre, the whych they strongly fortified with a dicke & a rampyre & ioyned it to the wall of the rest of the Citie. Into the whych place they conueied all their munitions and artillerie vsing it as a fort or a holde. Neuertheles they did not utterly abandon by the citie, but defended it as well as they could. Parles therfore determining to winne the citie, assaulted it in diuers places at ones. And the Gothes resorting to the same places stood at defence from y<sup>e</sup> walls. While these thinges were a doing, another copie of the souldyers of Parles stealing aboute to the further syde & fyndynge no bodie there, rered vp their ladders and skailed the walles. The noyse that was made therevppon betraied that the Cytie was taken, and the Gothes leauing theyr defence, some fled to

Narces taketh  
Rome,

## Gothes in Italy. 174.

to the towne of Portua & some wyth-  
drew theselues to the forre at Adrians  
tumble. By thys meanes Parles gate  
Rome; & after he had a whyle besye-  
ged the hold, he toke it by composition.  
There were in Campanie many Se-  
natours & Senatours childezen, whom  
Totilas for the great auctoritie & fa-  
uour that their auncestours had, wold  
not suffer to retourne into the Cytie.  
Besydes them; there were dyuers of  
the nobilitie whiche the Gothes had  
sent thither vpon mistrust. All the whi-  
che, wyth their, childezen and kynnsfocke  
the gothes did put to death. Moreover  
Totilas had chosen CCC. yongme as  
it had bene to scrue him in y wars, but  
in very deede to keepe the for pledges,  
and therefore he sent them on a vyage  
beyond the Riuer Po. The which like  
wyle after that Rome was come into  
y handes of Parles, were put to death  
every chone by the Gothes.

The crueltie  
of the gothes  
towards the  
Romaines.

The



## Of the warre of the

### The ix. Chapter

The falsehoode and treason of a gothishe  
Captayne named Regnaris. Narfes reco-  
uereth Portua. Teias kinge of the gothis  
and the sayd Narfes entrapone agaynst  
another by a Ryuers syde the watter run-  
nyng betwyxe them wythout anye  
battell vntyll after longe tyme Teias ha-  
uynge through the treason losse hys shippes  
and by meanes thereof beyng destitute  
of victualle and arillerys, he keppe that  
grounde anye longer, ramoueth in a hyl  
not farre from the same place, where be-  
yng in manner beleaged by Narfes, he  
setterh hys men in battell daye and ge-  
uynge ferce assautes vpon hys enemyes  
after a whole dayes foyghtyng and ma-  
nye a noble deede of prowesse by hym  
doone he is at laste slaine and the battell  
ceaseth for that nyghte the whyche be-  
gynneth agayne the nexte morayng, con-  
tynewinge all the daye lyke wyse vntyll  
it be darcke nyghte. Wherevpon they  
sende commissioners vnto Narfes for  
peace whyche vpon reasonable condy-  
tions is graunted and the warres in Italye  
are broughte to a fynall ende and quiet-  
nesse.

About

# Gothes in Italy

175

**A** **B** **D** **A** **T** **E** the same tyme The falschod  
 Regnaris Captayne of **Ta**, and treason  
 rent when he hearde that **Te**, of Regnaris.  
 las was made kynge and that  
 the Frenchemen woulde comme to  
 hys ayde, repented hym that he  
 hadde reuolted to the Emperour,  
 and determyned to tourne to the  
 Gothes agayne. Powe to the en-  
 tente he woulde recouer agayne hys  
 hostages, he ymagined thys sub-  
 teltye. He sent to Macurius Cap-  
 tayne of Hydunt, desyringe hym  
 of ayde agaynst an armye of the  
 Gothes whych he falsely alledged  
 were commynge agaynst hym.  
 Macurius mystrustynge no deceipte  
 sente hym fyfthe of hys souldyers  
 to Tarent, whome Regnaris im-  
 mediatlye caste into pryson, and wrot  
 vnto Macurius that yf he woulde

haue

## Of the warre of the

haue his souldiers, he should delpyner hym the hostages that he had of hys in keeping. Upon the receit of thys message, Macurius was sore troubled in hys mynde, and leauyng a few men behynde hym for the defence of hys piece, went wyth the rest of hys armye agaynste Regnaris. Regnaris makinge no delaye in the matter, put to deathe all the Souldyers that he had receyued, and then pssuyng oute of Tarent to encounter wyth Macurius was putte to the worse, and being driven to flye with the losse of most of his souldyers when he coulde not recover to Tarent for that the wates were forelaped, he gate hym to Acheruse. In the meane season Purses sendyng hys armye to Portua, besieged the towne & at length recovered it. After thys he assailed Centmucelles and in likewise brought it in subiectiō. Teias also ceased not to sollicit the Frenche nation and to allure them to take hys parte in the warres, promysinge them  
some

Narles recovered  
Portua.

sometyme monnye and sometyme co-  
pertenershyppc of the kyngdome of I-  
talye . But the Frenchemen had al-  
readye determyned not to entermedle  
themselues in anye suche warres. By  
meanes whereof the Gothes were dis-  
appoynted of theyr hope . Totilas in  
the time of hys lyfe had gathered to-  
gyther a greate Threasure at Paue,  
& had layd by no small masse of monny  
in the foztresse of Cume , & had made  
his brother Captaine of the same foz-  
tresse . When Parces had vnderstan-  
ding therof, he sent part of hys armye  
to besyege Cume , and he hymselfe a-  
bydyinge still at Rome, endeouored to  
repayze the Cytye and to replenysh  
it wyth people . And to the entente  
that the Gothes that were beyonde  
the Ryuer Po shoulde not rescowe  
Cume or anye other of the places that  
were besyged , he commaunded  
John Vitallian and Philimunt wyth  
theyr bandes to abyde in Vetruria, to  
set



## Of the warre of the

sette themselves agaynst the enemye  
at the fyrste appoche and cutte them  
of ere they came anye further . For  
Teias when he perceyued that Cume  
was besyged , determyned fullye to  
goe and rescowe it . Wherevppon set-  
tyng oute of Hauye , by longe and  
ouerthwarte iourneyes he ledde hys  
holle by the shore of the vpper sea and  
so throughe the countreyes of the Pi-  
centes and Marses into Campanye.  
The whiche when Marses vnderstood  
he called Iohn wyth hys band oute of  
Hetruria . After whose commynge  
he marched forwarde into Campanye  
wyth hys whole power fullye purpo-  
sing to encounter wyth Teias. There  
is a hill in Campanye called Vesu-  
us oute of the tooppe whereof often-  
tymes ryseth vpp smoke and flames  
of fyre . But in the foote of the same  
mountain are springs of swete water  
the whiche doe make a brooke called  
Dracon that runneth not farre from  
the Citie Puceria.

The moun-  
taine Vesu-  
uius.

This

## Gothes in Italy.

177

thys brooke is not very brode, but it  
is so deepe that neyther horseman noz  
foteman can passe it. Aboute thys  
ryuer bothe armyes encamped. **Par** Narfes & **Te**  
ses on the hyther syde and **Teias** on <sup>ias encamp to</sup>  
the further side, the riuer ronning in <sup>gether parted</sup>  
the myddes betwene the both. <sup>with a riuer.</sup> There  
was but one bydge ouer it, & that had  
the Gothes taken. By meanes wherof  
it laye in their hande to chose wyther  
they would fyght or not fyght. The ar-  
myes abode in thys sorte by the space of  
two monethes, so that **Narfes** & his me  
which were desyrous to come to hande  
strokes, could not by any means come  
to their enemyes, only they came to the  
riuers syde from both Campes & shotte  
arrowes and threiw dartes one at ano-  
ther. Also there were fought many co-  
bates and many chalenges were per-  
formed on both sydes duryng the sayd  
tyme, & the Gothe soldiers passing  
ouer the bydge dyd fight with the soul-  
diers of **Narfes** hand to hand. The sea  
was well & nere at hand & the Gothes

Z. j.

had

## Of the warre of the

The Gothes  
lose their ship  
pes by treaso:

A cruel battel  
betwene the  
Gothes & the  
imperialls.

had their shippes vpon the water which  
alwayes brought corne and victualls &  
set it a land nere vnto them, fro whence  
it was stil conueyed to the Camp. But  
after the time that their nauie through  
treason was losse, and that they could  
haue no moze victualls and artillerys  
brought to the by the sea, the Gothes  
were constrayned of necessitye to dy-  
lodge fro that place. Whereupon for-  
saking the byldge & the grounde by the  
riuers syde, they departed to the nere  
hyll which the inhabitantes of the cou-  
trye do cal the mylke hyll. Parles pur-  
suyng them (forasmuch as he could not  
assayle them by reason of the steepe-  
nesse of the hyll,) settled hymselfe about the  
foote of it. The Gothes beyng in the  
samie place also as much oppressed with  
scarcetye as they were before, determi-  
ned to put the matter in tryall by the  
sword. And thereupon puttyng them-  
selues in aray vpon the toppe of the hill,  
they descended from aboue & sodaynely  
assayled their enemyes thinking no-  
thing

## Gothes in Italy. 178

thing lesse, then of any such matter. In  
 somuch that they had not any leysure to  
 order their battells: or to encourage  
 their souldiers, but were fayne to sette  
 theselues against the enemye according  
 as euery mannes fortune had appoynted  
 hym. And for because the Gothes  
 had lest their horses & fought on foote,  
 Rarles dyd set hys fotemen also to en-  
 counter with them. The battell was  
 cruell & bloody in all places. For on the  
 one syde the Gothes fought obstinately  
 as men in despayre, & on the other syde  
 the souldiers of Rarles were ashamed  
 to geue place being so many in number  
 as they were, in especially considering  
 that but euen the other daye they had  
 compelled them to forsake their first  
 campe, and had well nre besieged them  
 now in the hill which they had fled to  
 for their refuge. Both parties being in-  
 censed with these perswasions, foughte  
 very valiantly. As I will not passe ouer  
 without the noble Demeanor of  
 Theias kynge of the Gothes in hys bat-

The notable  
 prowesse &  
 courage of Te-  
 ias king of the  
 Gothes,

Z.ij.



**O**f the watter of the  
tell. For he being endued as it were  
with an heroical promesse, wolde nedes  
put himselfe into the forefront of the  
battel among the foremost fyghters. He  
was easie to be knownen from the rest  
by hys goodly armour & hys ryche ap-  
parrell. In the left hand he helde a tar-  
get & in hys ryght hand he brandished  
a flauelyng. Many that encountered a-  
gainsst hym he strake starke dead, & yet  
dartes came flying at him fro all sides  
Howbeit he being of an incredible cou-  
rage and strength, by many a wayles in  
armes. At the length when hys shylde  
stake full of dartes so that he could not  
handsomely wield it, standyng with his  
face towarde hys enemyes & calling to  
his harnessebearer by name he comma-  
ded hym with a loud voyce to byng  
hym another target. When it was  
brought vnto hym, he let slippe hys old  
one, to haue taken the new in his hand,  
in the which chaunge it was his chaunce  
to receaue his death: stood by a dart  
that was sent at hym. By the which  
albeit

albeit he lost much blood, yet notwithstanding  
standyng lyke a most puyssant champi-  
on he neuer gaue foote backe nor ne-  
uer tourned hys face, but standyng  
scoutly towarde hys enemyes, fought  
it oute as longe as he was able to  
stande on hys legges, vntyll at length  
febled wth trauell and losse of blouds  
he fell downe flatte vpon hys face.  
It was almost fyve of the clocke when  
Teias dyed. And yet the Go-  
thes were nothing at all discoura-  
ged wth the death of theyr kyng,  
but helde oute the battell vntyll it was  
nyghte neuer geuyng one foote backe.  
Fynallye when it was so darke that  
they coulde not see, the battell ceased,  
beyng begonne at the sonne rysyng.  
What nyghte both the armyes wat-  
ched in theyr harnesse, and althow  
as the daye pered, they fell to sygh-  
tyng a frethe, continuing so still vntill  
to the sonne goyng downe to the great  
slaughter of both partes. At length  
the Gothes sente vnto the partes offer-  
ryng

The death of  
Teias.

## Of the Warre of the

ryng to departe oute of Italpe so he  
would suffer them without impeache-  
mente to cartye suche thynges as they  
had alwaye wyth them. But yf he  
would not graunt them this request;  
they sayd they would neuer leaue fight-  
tyng, as long as the breathe was in  
their bodpes. Then Charles had  
heard their demaundes, by the aduise of  
hys counsell he condyscended vnto the;  
to the entent he would not to the great  
perilodpes and losse of hys men, seekes  
the aduantage of hys desperate enea-  
myes. In the meane tyme aboute a  
thousande horsemen fled oute of the  
Camp of the Gothes; and by greate  
iourneyes came vnto Rome and other  
towntes beyonde the Tyber. The  
residues fell to a small agreement with  
Charles; promysing to departe oute  
of Italpe, carryng nothing more ather  
euey man hys owne; and neuer af-  
ter to make warre vpon the Romayne  
Empyre, promysed alwayes that they  
themselves shoulde retayne still their  
freedome

**Gothes in Italy.** 180.

freedome and libertye wythout any  
bondage or subiexion to the Em-  
pyre. The whiche being done  
according to couenant, Par-  
ses receaued Cume & al  
other towne that held  
with the Gothes, and  
so ended the eygh-  
tenthe yeare of  
this warre.

**FINIS**